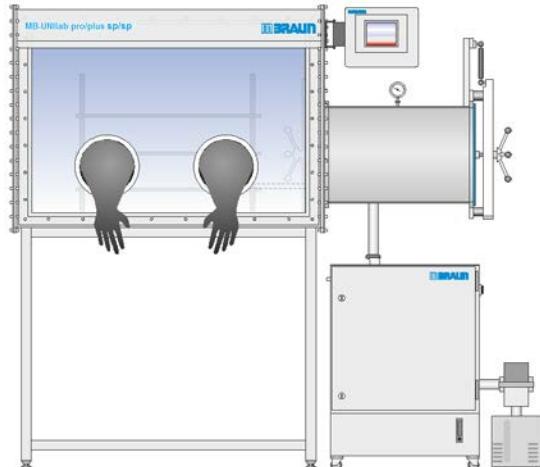


# Inertgas-Systems

- Workstation  
UNIlab plus/pro - sp/dp

Touch Panel MB-TFT70

## Operating Manual



## Imprint

Original  
**Operating Manual V 4.5 – 03/2017**  
MB-Art. Nr. 2610369-EN

Workstations UNIIlab Plus/Pro - SP/DP

Touch Panel MB-TFT70

M. Braun Inertgas-Systeme GmbH  
Dieselstr. 31  
D-85748 Garching

Website [www.mbraun.de](http://www.mbraun.de)

Phone: +49 89 32669-0  
Fax. +49 (0)89 3269-235  
E-Mail service@mbraun.de



Inertgas Systems

## Operating Manual

- 1      Information**
- 2      System**
- 3      Safety**
- 4      Preparation and Installation**
- 5      Structure of the Controller and Touch Panel**
- 6      Basic Principles of Operating Modes**
  - 6 A ECO-Mode \*)
- 7      Operation of the Gas Purifying System**
- 8      Operation of the Inert Gas Box**
  - 8 A Analyzer \*)
  - 8 B Safety Valve MB-OSV \*)
- 9      Operation of the Antechamber**
  - 9 A Purge antechamber \*)
- 10     Additional Components**
- 11     Trouble Shooting**
- 12     Inspection and Maintenance**
- 13     Spare Parts**
- 14     Third Party Documentation**
- 15     Certificates**
- 16     Electrical / Wiring Diagrams**

\*) Optional additional chapters

**Annexes:**

*PDF of the Manual and Third Party  
Documentation (CD-ROM or USB-Stick)*



<b>1.1</b>	<b>System information.....</b>	<b>1-2</b>
1.1.1	<i>Scope of delivery.....</i>	1-3
1.1.2	<i>Type plate .....</i>	1-3
1.1.3	<i>Safety markings on the system .....</i>	1-4
<b>1.2</b>	<b>Use of this operating manual .....</b>	<b>1-6</b>
1.2.1	<i>Before use of the inert gas system.....</i>	1-6
1.2.2	<i>While the inert gas system is in use .....</i>	1-6
1.2.3	<i>Markings in this operating manual.....</i>	1-6
1.2.4	<i>Safety instructions.....</i>	1-6
<b>1.3</b>	<b>Liability .....</b>	<b>1-9</b>
<b>1.4</b>	<b>Warranty .....</b>	<b>1-9</b>
<b>1.5</b>	<b>Service address.....</b>	<b>1-10</b>

## *System information*

## 1 Information about the Operating Manual

## 1.1 System information

**This operating manual belongs to the following M.Braun system:**

**Designation / Type:** .....

**Serial number(s):** .....

System administrator / User: .....

Other system information: .....

The system is a complete machine in the sense of the machine directive 2006/42/EC

*See declaration of conformity (Chap.. 15).....*

The system delivered is regarded as an incomplete machine in the sense of the machine directive 2006/42/EC, Annex II B.

- If the system delivered is intended for the construction from several parts or
  - as a fundamental component for assembly with the customer's components (for example in case of the delivery of a gas purifier or inert gas box). See installation declaration (Chap. 15).

## Notes:

### 1.1.1 Scope of delivery

The scope of delivery is defined in the contractual agreements according to order confirmation and follow-ups.

This operating manual describes - regardless of the scope of delivery - a typical standard system with

- Inert gas box with antechamber
- Gas purification system
- MCS controller with touch panel
- Sensors for monitoring of the box/antechamber atmosphere

Optional components / functions are marked in the operating manual, such as, e.g.

- Solvent filter
- Vacuum pump
- Antechamber cover lock

See also *Chap. 10 Additional components*.

### 1.1.2 Type plate

Rear side of the system: examples of type plates of standard systems

<b>MBRAUN</b>		<b>MBRAUN</b>	
<b>UNILAB</b>		<b>UNILAB</b>	
Projekt / Kundennr.: Project / Service No.:	< leer >	Projekt / Kundennr.: Project / Service No.:	< leer >
Handschuhschrank / Glove Box		Handschuhschrank / Glove Box	
Boxdruck, max.: Box Pressure, min.:	+ 15 mbar	Boxdruck, max.: Box Pressure, min.:	+ 15 mbar
Boxdruck, min.: Box Pressure, min.:	- 15 mbar	Boxdruck, min.: Box Pressure, min.:	- 15 mbar
Leak Rate: ISO 10648 Class I	< 0,05 Vol %/h	Leak Rate: ISO 10648 Class I	< 0,05 Vol %/h
Schleuse / Antechamber		Schleuse / Antechamber	
Endvakuum: Total Vacuum:	$5 \times 10^{-2}$ mbar	Endvakuum: Total Vacuum:	$5 \times 10^{-2}$ mbar
Integrale Leckrate: Integral Leak Rate:	$10^{-5}$ mbar l / sec	Integrale Leckrate: Integral Leak Rate:	$10^{-5}$ mbar l / sec
Baujahr: Manufactured:	< leer >	Baujahr: Manufactured:	< leer >
M. Braun Inertgas-Systeme GmbH Dieselstrasse 31 85748 Garching	CE	M. Braun Inertgas-Systeme GmbH Dieselstrasse 31 85748 Garching	CE

Project-specific systems deviate depending on their equipment.

## System information

### 1.1.3 Safety markings on the system

Devices may bear the following warnings and mandatory signs:



#### General warning

Indicates possible personal injury, possible damage to the system or accessories and a possible compromising of the process materials!



#### Risk of hazardous electrical voltage

Indicates possible personal injury due to electrical voltage such as uncontrolled muscle reactions, crippling, burns or death!

Use caution! There is danger to life and limb!



#### Risk of gases under pressure

Indicates possible personal injury, possible damage to the system or accessories due to gas containers or gas lines!



#### Risk of hot surface

Do not touch hot surface! Risk of burning!

The markings in this operating manual refer only to devices and components from MB 300G Systems

Technical Manual - V7.1 - 11/2016- 11151RAUN. Other manufacturers' components may be marked with other safety instructions that are not explained in this operating manual. See *supplier documentation Chap. 14.*

#### Duties of the Operator

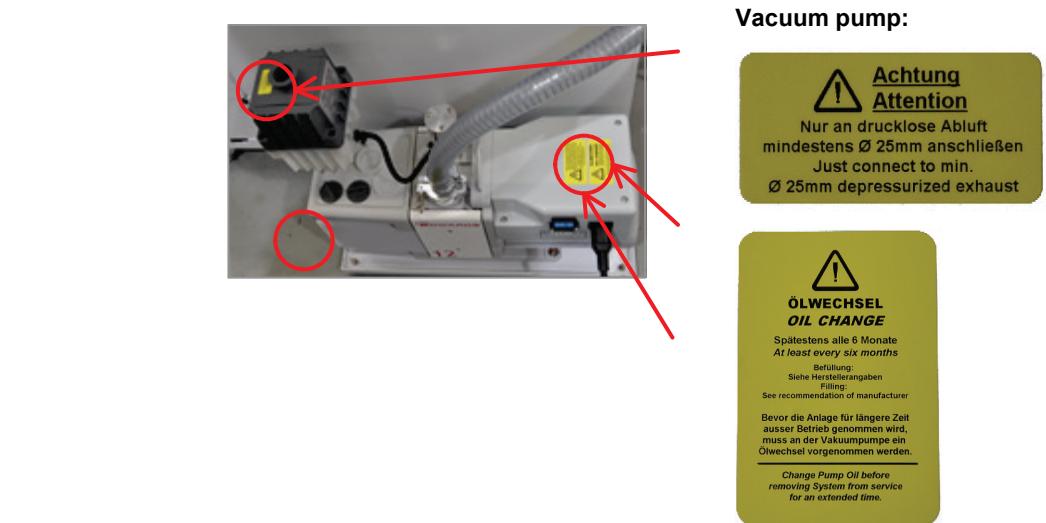
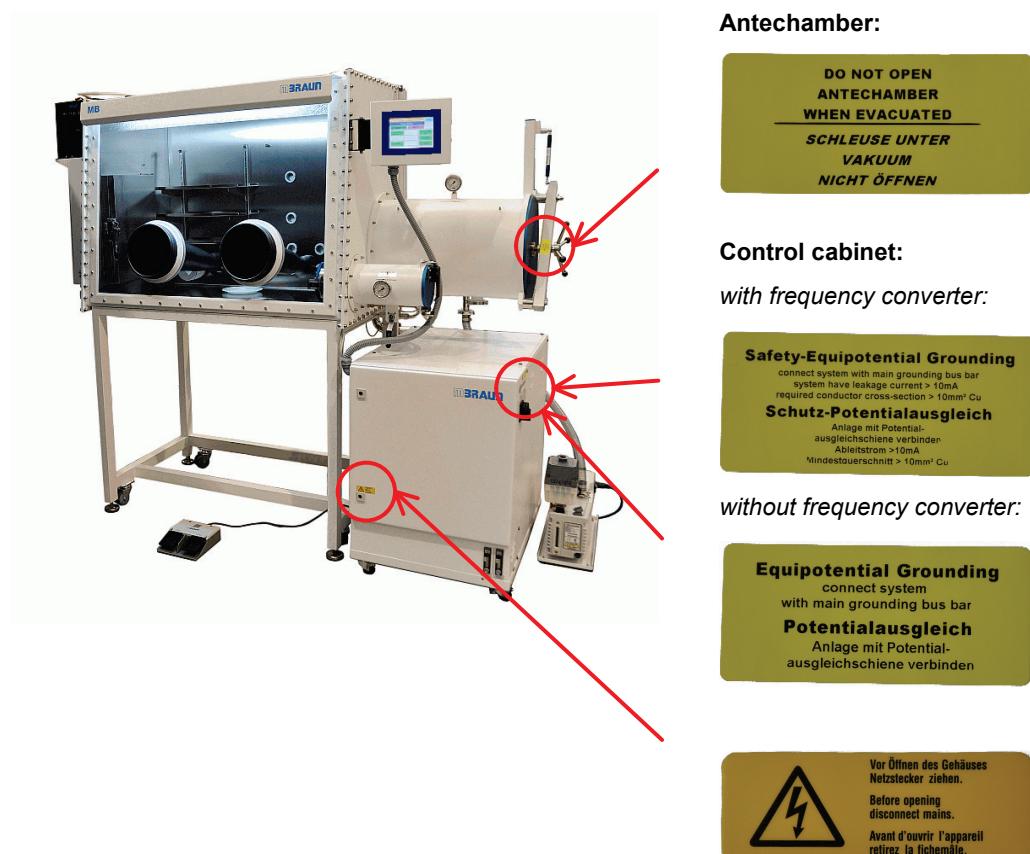
The system operator is obligated to attach safety markings to the system if dangers results from system expansions or processes. This applies especially to the use of dangerous or toxic chemicals.



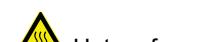
#### DANGER

Risk of injury and damage!

All safety markings on the system must always be visible and legible!

**System information****Position of the safety markings on the system (Standard)****On the side:**

(see also supplier documentation)

**WARNINGS**

Hot surface



## Use of this operating manual

### 1.2 Use of this operating manual

#### 1.2.1 Before use of the inert gas system

Anybody who works on the system must read, understand, and follow the operating manual while performing any necessary work: this includes transport, storage, installation, commissioning, and servicing.

- Read the instructions completely before using the system in order to avoid improper operation and injuries.
- In case of questions, please contact **MBRAUN** Service.

#### 1.2.2 While the inert gas system is in use

Always keep the operating manual within reach of the system.

Follow all safety instructions in this manual

---

! **MBRAUN** inert gas systems are subject to constant safety-technical enhancement.  
Therefore it can be that the actual system components differ from those described in the operating manual. In case of doubt, be sure to contact the manufacturer.

---

#### 1.2.3 Markings in this operating manual

**Sequence of actions:**

- > Prerequisite
- Action
- Intermediate result / consequence
- ⇒ Result

---

! Information and tips (action-related)

---

#### Background information

**Numbering:**

00000-1 Number in panel image

#### 1.2.4 Safety instructions

The safety instructions in this operating manual comply with the guidelines 2006/42/EC, DIN EN ISO 12100-1 and ISO EN 82079, ISO 14121-1, and 2. They are used analogously to ANSI Z535.6.

The following safety instructions are used in this operating manual:

**DANGER**

Severe to life-threatening injuries. Occurrence very likely to certain.

**WARNING**

Severe to life-threatening injuries. Occurrence possible.

**CAUTION**

Slight to moderate injuries. Occurrence possible.

**Marking of the type of danger (optional)**

If necessary, the type of danger may be marked:

**Type of danger – standard systems****Risk of hazardous electrical voltage!**

Indicates possible personal injury due to electrical voltage such as uncontrolled muscle reactions, crippling, burns or death!

Use caution! There is danger to life and limb!

**Risk of suffocation****Hot surface****Mechanical hazard!**

Indicates injuries to hands and arms due to crushing, bending, cutting, cutting movements, and catching in rotating equipment.

**Type of danger – in case of customer-specific equipment/processes****Risk of explosion!**

Indicates possible personal injuries due to the handling of flammable or explosive gases.

**Use of this operating manual**

**Warnings about property damage**

**NOTICE** Note about property damage. Occurrence possible.

**Instructions**



Wear full breathing protection mask!



Wear protective goggles!



Wear protective gloves!

**Type and function of the safety instructions**

The safety instructions in this operating manual are used as:

- Basic safety instructions. The essential safety aspects are summarised in the basic safety instructions chapter. They serve as safety instructions before using the inert gas system.
- Preceding safety instructions. At the beginning of a chapter/a sequence of instructions, there are warning signs and signal words. The preceding safety instructions warn about risks of injury that may arise during a sequence of actions.
- Integrated safety instructions. Directly preceding the action are risks of injury that arise during one or several related action(s). The warnings are integrated into the action sequence, and either marked with a signal word or danger sign.

## 1.3 Liability

The contractually agreed-upon liability conditions apply. The manufacturer assumes no liability for product damage or personal injury that results from improper handling or the failure to follow operating manual or safety guidelines.

Designations used in this operating manual may be trademarked product names; these serve only the purpose of identification.

### Changes and modifications

The warranty and warranty claims are voided by non-approved changes and modifications!

- Changes and modifications may only be made by **MBRAUN** specialised personnel. Exceptions require written confirmation.
- The manufacturer assumes no liability for damage due to authorised system modifications or software updates if these were performed improperly or the damage arose due to improper operation because of neglected updating of the operating manual. There are generally no liability claims for unauthorised system modifications.

## 1.4 Warranty

The warranty is only valid for the contractually-equipped system. Warranty claims are voided under the following conditions:

- Unauthorised changes to the system without the manufacturer's permission
- Improper operation of the system
- Improper use of the system
- Inadequate maintenance of the system
- Carelessness with respect to the system supply
- Use of other manufacturers' components without permission of the system manufacturer
- Changes of programme and system settings without the manufacturer's permission (outside of the parameter limits described in this operating manual).



Valid both for individual components as well as for complete systems!

---

**Service address**

**1.5 Service address**

M. Braun Inertgas-Systeme  
GmbH Dieselstrasse 3185748  
GarchingGermany Tel: +49 (0)89 32669-  
230 Fax: +49 (0)89 32669-235

E-mail: [service@mbraun.de](mailto:service@mbraun.de) Internet:  
[www.mbraun.com](http://www.mbraun.com)



<b>2.1</b>	<b>System and system types .....</b>	<b>2-2</b>
2.1.1	<i>System .....</i>	2-2
2.1.2	<i>System types.....</i>	2-3
2.1.3	<i>System controller.....</i>	2-6
<b>2.2</b>	<b>System components gas purifier .....</b>	<b>2-7</b>
2.2.1	<i>Design and function.....</i>	2-7
2.2.2	<i>Operation in one-reactor system and two-reactor system.....</i>	2-8
2.2.3	<i>Operation with solvent filter (LMF) - (Option) .....</i>	2-9
<b>2.3</b>	<b>System component inert gas box .....</b>	<b>2-10</b>
2.3.1	<i>Design and function.....</i>	2-10
2.3.2	<i>Functions for the control of the box atmosphere.....</i>	2-13
2.3.3	<i>Functions for pressure regulation of the box .....</i>	2-14
<b>2.4</b>	<b>System component antechamber .....</b>	<b>2-16</b>
2.4.1	<i>Structure and functions .....</i>	2-16
2.4.2	<i>Operation of vacuum antechamber.....</i>	2-19
2.4.3	<i>Principle of the transfer process vacuum antechamber.....</i>	2-20
<b>2.5</b>	<b>System component vacuum pump .....</b>	<b>2-22</b>

## System and system types

## 2 System description

### 2.1 System and system types

#### 2.1.1 System

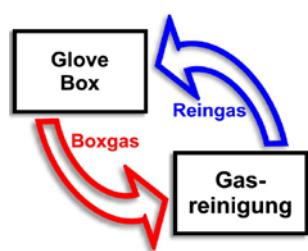
A complete **MBRAUN** inert gas system consists of the main components

- Gas purifier (with vacuum pump + blower)
- Inertgas box
- Antechamber

It serves the maintenance of a specific atmosphere of inert gas (typically nitrogen or argon) with an oxygen and water vapour content of < 1 ppm (V).

The gas purifying system is used primarily to protect products. The highly-pure atmosphere allows work with oxygen and moisture-sensitive materials and processes.

Using the antechamber and antechamber processes, it is possible to transfer materials between the box and environment without disturbing the box atmosphere.

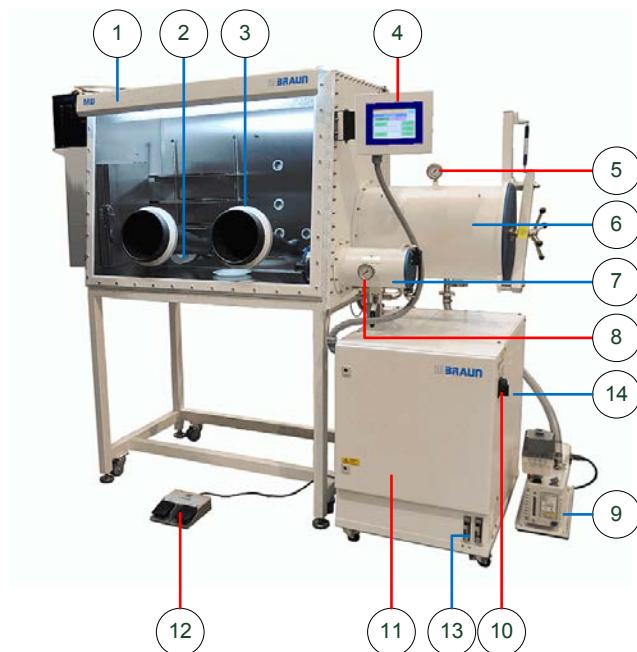


The quality of the inert gas atmosphere in the box is maintained through circulation of the box atmosphere via the reactors of the gas purifier.

## 2.1.2 System types

### 2.1.2.1 Inertgas box with UNILab Plus SP/ DP gas purifier

The Unilab plus sp/dp workstation offers a compact system with inert gas box and adjacent gas purifier. The system consists of the following components:



— Typical components of the system

— Electrical + controller / Control and display elements

Main component	Nr.	Designation	see chapter
Inertgas box	(1)	Inertgas box	8
	(2)	Particle filter (input and output filter)	
	(3)	Pane with gloveport feedthroughs/ gloves	
	--	Sensors ( <i>in the piping - without Fig.</i> )	8

## System and system types

Main component	Nr.	Designation	see chapter
Controller	(4)	Touch panel	5
	(12)	Foot switch for regulation of the operating pressure	
Antechamber	(6) + (7)	Main antechamber / mini-antechamber	9
	(5) + (8)	Manometer	
	(9)	Vacuum pump (VP)	
Control cabinet	(10)	Main switch	
	(11)	Control cabinet	
Gas purifier	(13)	Flowmeter (for regeneration)	7
	(14)	Reactors (RKM) (gas purifier H <sub>2</sub> O + O <sub>2</sub> ) /Solvent filter (LMF) (optional)	7

## Additional functions (optional):

Standard system	with additional functions (optional)		see chapter
Unilab Pro/Plus SP/DP	-BS	Box purging	9.5
	-LMF	Solvent Filter	7.4
	-BS-LMF	Box purging + LMF	9.5 + 7.4
	-LMF-reg	Regenerative LMF	7.4
	-BS-LMF-reg	Box purging + regenerative LMF	9.5 + 7.4

### 2.1.2.2 Modular inert gas box with external UNILab Plus SP/ DP gas purifier

The Unilab Pro modular system with adjacent gas purifier can optionally be expanded into a multi-box system and equipped with special equipment.



Set-up of the gas purifier in modular systems \*)

*Components not identified: see Fig. above*

\*) The numbering is analogous to the Fig. shown above.

Main component	Fig. no.	Designation
Inertgas box	(1)	Modular inert gas box

### 2.1.2.3 Special equipment and functions

- Additional functions in optional chapter (A..) for gas purifier, inert gas box, and antechamber
- Additional components in Chapter 10 (A..) optionally with separate operating manual (e.g. spin coater, evaporators, etc.)
- Special equipment from third-party suppliers: See *Chapter 15, Supplier documentation*.

### System and system types

#### 2.1.3 System controller

##### 2.1.3.1 MCS controller

The entire system is controlled by a MCS controller. Configuration and operation is done using a TFT 70 control panel.

The measurement values of sensors and pressure management devices provide the basis for the parametrisation of the controller and the monitoring of the system.

*See Chapter 5, Controller*

##### 2.1.3.2 Valve operation

- The gas flow and pressure are controlled to some extent using valves (e.g. control valves with various drives, e.g. electro-pneumatic, electromagnetic, etc.)
- Manually-activated valves (e.g. manual valves gas supply, manually-operated mini-antechamber)

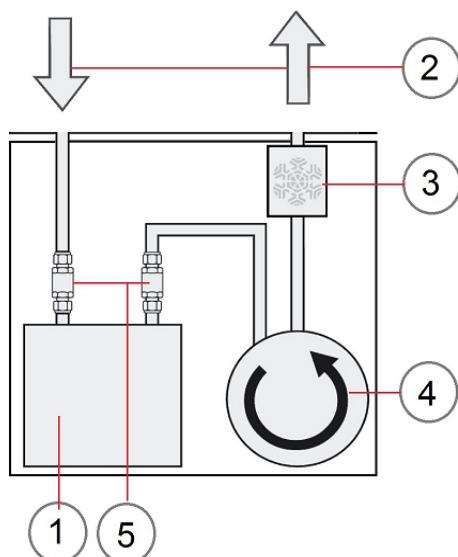
## 2.2 System components gas purifier

The gas purifier serves to remove moisture and oxygen from the box atmosphere, which with the help of the circulation is fed into the reactors. Optional: removal of solvents.

### 2.2.1 Design and function

The gas purifier consists of the following main components

→ Gas purifier input  
(gas from the box)      → Gas purifier output  
(purified gas in the box)



Nr.	Designation	Function
(1)	H <sub>2</sub> O and O <sub>2</sub> reactor	Through chemical reaction, the reactor filling removes oxygen and absorbs water vapour from the recirculated box atmosphere.
--	Solvent filter (LMF) - optional	The solvent filter removes solvent vapours from the recirculated box atmosphere and protects the H <sub>2</sub> O/O <sub>2</sub> reactor against the adverse effects of solvents.
(2)	--	Gas flow (circulation between gas and gas purifier)
(3)	Cooling /(heat exchanger)-optional	Gas compression and electrical heat sources heat up the inert gas. The gas cooling removes the heat before the gas is fed back into the inert gas box.
(4)	Blower (circulation unit)	Circulation of the box atmosphere between gas purifier and box
(5)	Valves	The gas flow is controlled by electromagnetic valves and the MCS controller.

**System components gas purifier****Circulation**

The oxygen and moisture-laden box atmosphere is recirculated continuously via the reactor using the blower.

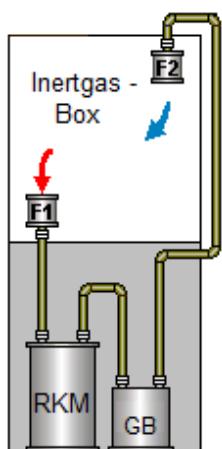
Here special fill materials in the reactor remove oxygen through chemical reaction and they absorb water vapour from the box atmosphere. The purified gas is fed back into the box.

**Regeneration**

After longer use in circulation operation, the fill material of the reactor is saturated. This is indicated by an increase of the H<sub>2</sub>O/O<sub>2</sub> concentration in the box.

Therefore, the reactors must be regenerated regularly. In a controlled, automatic procedure, the purification capacity is restored using regeneration gas.

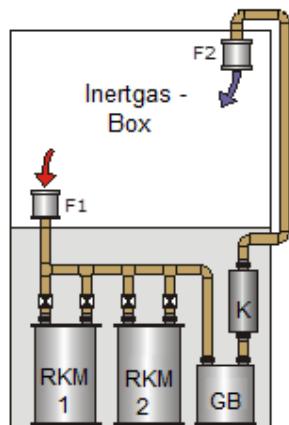
## 2.2.2 Operation in one-reactor system and two-reactor system

**System with one reactor:**

(Unilab SP)

**Operating mode:**

The gas purifier is either in circulation operation or in regeneration operation.

**Systems with two reactors**

(Unilab DP):

While one reactor (RKM 1 or RKM 2) is in regeneration operation, the box atmosphere can be circulated and purified by the second reactor.

In systems with two reactors, a continuous circulation of the box atmosphere is also possible during regeneration.

RKM= reactor

GB= Blower

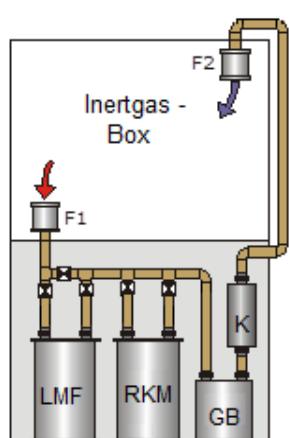
K= Heat exchanger (optional)

**System component inert gas box****2.2.3 Operation with solvent filter (LMF) - (Option)**

Depending on the hazardous materials to be filtered (e.g. organic polar or unpolar solvents, acid gases), the **MBRAUN** solvent filters are filled with various filter media. The filter efficiency and absorption capacity depend on the qualities of the solvents (e.g. boiling point, vapour pressure, chemical nature), on the properties of the filter medium, as well as on the operating conditions (ambient temperature, process gas).

**Function in circulation operation**

A solvent filter removes solvent vapours from the box atmosphere and protects the reactor RKM against the adverse effects of solvents.

**Solvent filter principle**

With use of a solvent filter (LMF), the box atmosphere loaded with solvent vapours initially circulates via the LMF, where the solvents are filtered out.

Only after that is the pre-purified box atmosphere fed into the reactor (RKM), purified, and fed back into the box.

*Optional:* In bypass operation, the circulation via the LMF can be interrupted.

LMF= Solvent filter      RKM= Reactor (H<sub>2</sub>O/ O<sub>2</sub>)      GB= Blower  
K= Heat exchanger (optional)

**Regenerative LMF (optional)**

The regeneration takes place according to the same principle as for the one and two-reactor systems (O<sub>2</sub> and H<sub>2</sub>O).

*Please note the instructions in Chap. 4 Installation.*

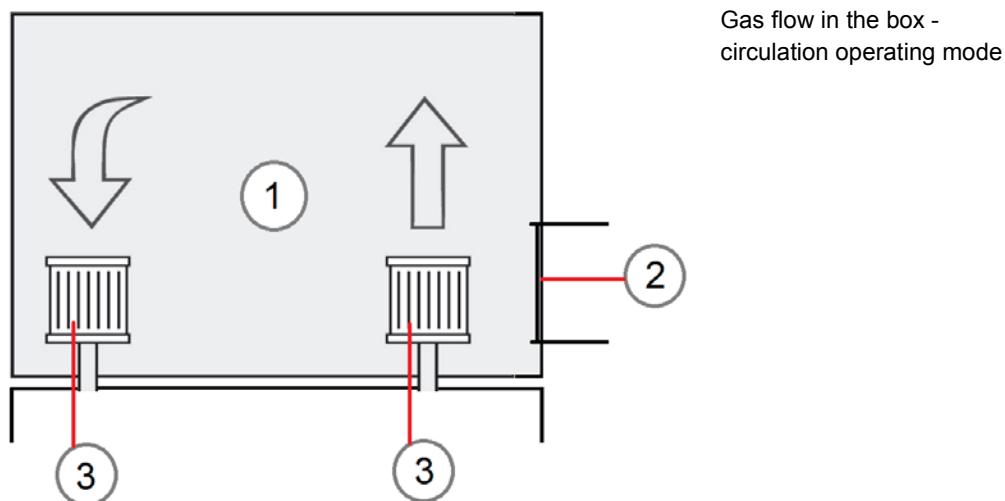
**Solvent filter (LMF) – Systems**

Operation	Principle	Filter medium
Manual LMF manual valves	Absorption principle / Replacement of filter medium	Active carbon
LMF Reg. - 1-filter system, MCS controlled, operated on the touch panel	Regenerative	Molecular sieve

*Operation of the solvent filter: See Chap. 7 Gas purifier*

**System component inert gas box****2.3 System component inert gas box**

An inert gas box is a container that is hermetically sealed off from the surrounding space. Inside, a defined atmosphere is generated and maintained, which typically consists of inert gases such as nitrogen or argon.

**2.3.1 Design and function**

Nr.	Designation	Function
(1)	Inertgas box	Work area with specific inert gas atmosphere for the processing of oxygen and moisture-sensitive substances and materials.
	Individual box	Can be designed as individual box and/or as
	MOD box	Modular box, designed for expansions / two-box systems
	Pipework	Connection to the gas purifier / media supply / Discharge of exhaust air; system-specific; Optional equipment: sensors, particle filter
(2)	Antechamber	Connection box-outside: loading and unloading of material box (see description below)
	Touch panel	External on the box: controller and monitoring of the entire system
(3)	Particle filter	HEPA filter in gas feed and discharge protect the gas purifier against contamination from processes in the box and keep particles from the gas purifier away from the workspace in the inert box.

## System component inert gas box

Other equipment (no figure)

Nr.	Designation	Function
--	Sensors	Measurement of the box pressure and the box atmosphere (moisture and oxygen) optional: additional substances and gases / solvents Provide output data for the monitoring of (MCS-controlled) processes of the inert gas system.
--	Box pane	The box pane of polycarbonate partitions the box inside towards the bottom and provides gloveport feedthroughs.
--	Gloveport feedthroughs	Access from the outside to the work area in the box for handling of process materials and instruments.
--	Gloves	Butyl gloves have low gas permeability and high tolerance of chemical process materials. Optional: additional materials are available.
--	Lighting	Exterior mounted lights light up the working area glare-free
--	Media feedthroughs	Feedthroughs for external media supply in the box: (gas, electricity, USB interface ...) without Fig.
--	Shelves	Storage of process materials / products without Fig.

## 2.3.1.1 Gloves of the box

For gloves for the standard box, MBRAUN uses only butyl gloves.

**Specification:**

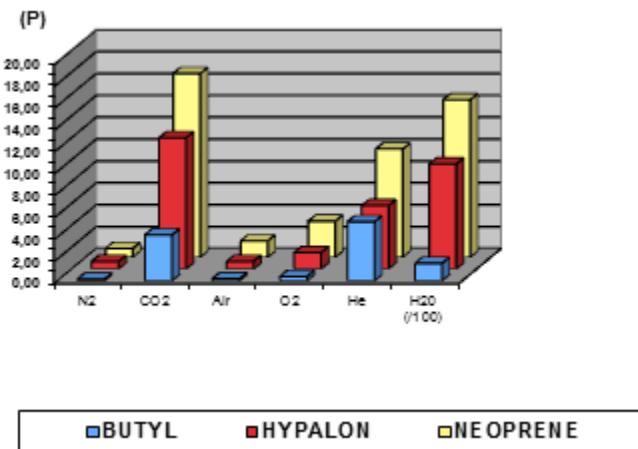
Property	Description
Temperature range	-40 °C to +90 °C
Permeability (P) for gases and water vapour	$\frac{10^{-9} \text{ cm}^3 \cdot \text{gas}}{\text{s}}$ See below for definition
Chemical resistance	Good resistance against acids and bases (for additional details: see data sheet)

**Permeability constant (P)**

Gas flow through 1 cm thick material at standard temperature and pressure. Measured rate 10-9cm3 gas/s.

**System component inert gas box**

Comparison of permeability for gases and water vapour (butyl, hypalon, neoprene)



- ! For use in higher temperature ranges, butyl gloves with hypalon coating are available. Ask **MBRAUN** Service.

### 2.3.1.2 Particle filter (box)

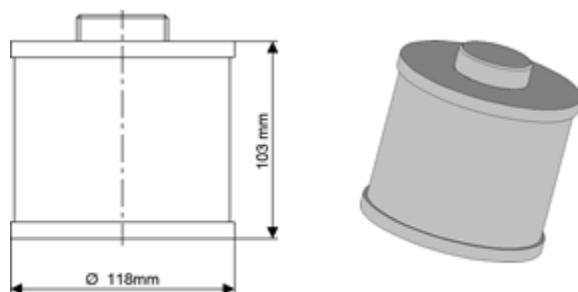
Inert gas boxes are equipped with dust filters. The dust filters are on the gas inlet and gas outlet. The inlet filter ensures optimal particle-free gas supply.

Dust filters protect the gas purifier against particles that can be generated due, for example, to ongoing processes in the inert gas box.

#### Technical Data

The filter types that are used in **MBRAUN** inert gas box systems demonstrate the following characteristics:

The standard filter corresponds to the HEPA format (classification H13\*) – this corresponds to the filtering of 99.95% of the particles with a diameter of up to 0.2 µm.



- ! Finer filter types are available (e.g. classification U15 – filtering of 99.9995% of the particles). Ask **MBRAUN** Service.\*)

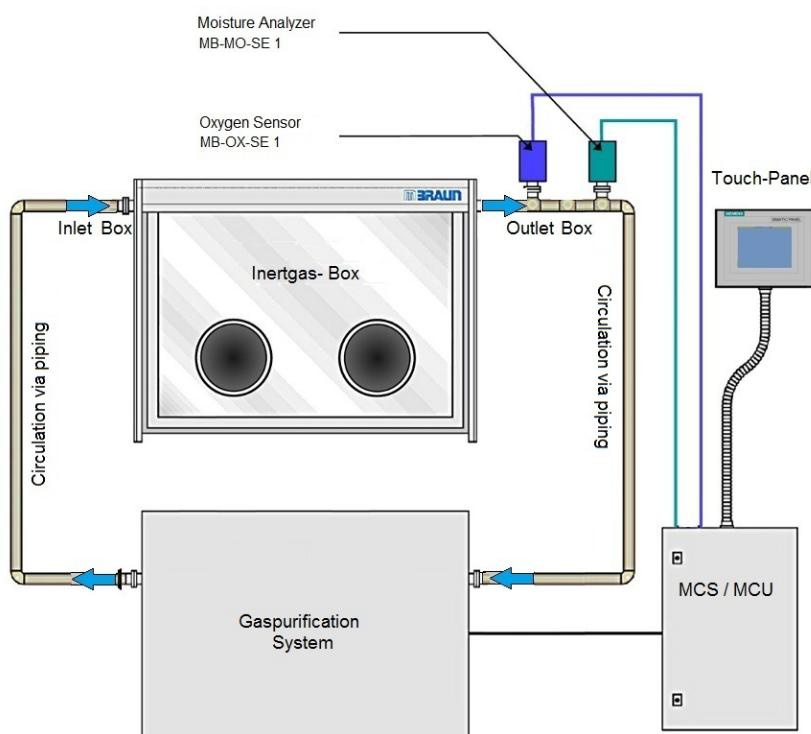
**System component inert gas box****2.3.2 Functions for the control of the box atmosphere****2.3.2.1 Sensor monitoring (H<sub>2</sub>O and O<sub>2</sub>)**

For the monitoring of the oxygen and moisture content in the box atmosphere, standard systems are equipped with the following sensors:

Type	Description	Measuring range
MB-OX-SE-1	Oxygen sensor	< 0.1 ... 1000 ppm
MB MO-SE-1	Moisture sensor	<0.1 ... 500 ppm

*Specification of the sensors: See attachment*

The sensors are installed in the pipework. The MCS controller evaluates the values displayed and controls the processes according to the parameters input (see Chapter 5).



Optional: solvents and other gases can be measured if necessary and evaluated by the controller (See additional equipment section).

**2.3.2.2 Automatic box purge (optional)**

If a defined limit value of H<sub>2</sub>O or O<sub>2</sub> is exceeded, the box is purged automatically with inert gas (process gas).

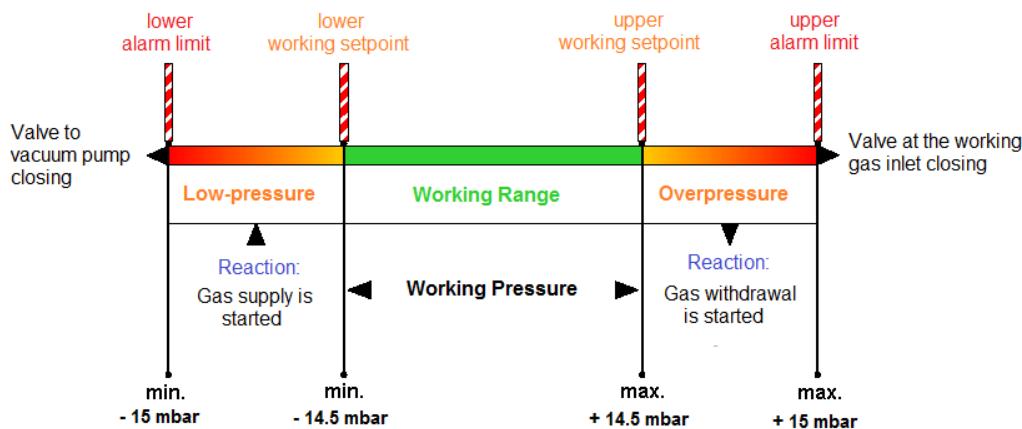
*Automatic purge + setting of the values and gas quantities: See Chap. 8 Inert gas box*

**System component inert gas box****2.3.3 Functions for pressure regulation of the box**

**MBRAUN** systems are equipped with a MCS-controlled pressure regulation, which is activated automatically when the inert gas box system is switched on.

**2.3.3.1 Definitions and settings**

Box pressure	Current pressure that reigns in the inert gas box.
Operating range	Defined pressure range within the operating limits in which the automatically-regulated pressure in the inert gas box may move. Within the operating range, the pressure in the inert gas box can be set by pressing the foot switch. The pressure regulation adheres to this operating range automatically.
Operating limits	The pressure limits of the operating range can be set in a range between the lower operating limit and the upper operating limit. If these limits are exceeded, the pressure is balanced out automatically. Factory settings: Upper operating limit +4 mbar; Lower operating limit -4 mbar. Note: the upper operating limit must be set at least 1 mbar higher than the lower operating limit.
Alarm limits	Outside of the limits of the operating range, alarm limits can be set to protect against under or overpressure in a range of -15 mbar to +15 mbar. If the alarm limits are under run or exceeded, the appropriate gas feed valves or in the circulation for the gas purification close. If > upper alarm limit → pressure discharge – stop gas feed If < lower alarm limit → stop circulation – introduction of gas Factory settings: Upper alarm limit +15 mbar; Lower alarm limit -15 mbar.

**Box pressure limits:**

*Example: the values displayed can differ from the actual values.*

## System component inert gas box

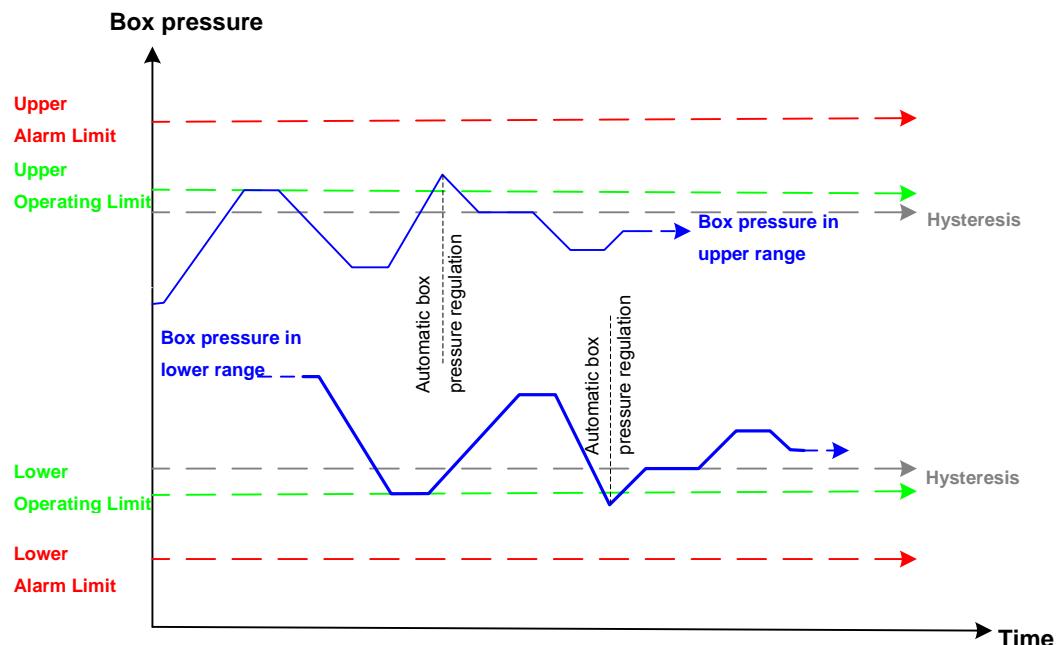
## 2.3.3.2 Automatic pressure regulation

How the pressure regulation works:

If the set pressure values are under run or exceeded, there is automatically a pressure equalisation:

Exceeding of the upper operating limit: Gas is removed automatically until the pressure equals the value of the hysteresis:

Exceeding of the lower operating limit: Gas is fed in automatically until the pressure equals the value of the hysteresis:



On exceeding/under running of the alarm limits, a warning message is generated on the touch panel (see Chap. 11 Troubleshooting).

Optionally it is possible to set up an opto-acoustic alarm (*if an increased safety standard is required*).

*Setting the values and gas quantities: see Chapter 8, Parameters*

## 2.3.3.3 Pressure regulation via foot switch

Using the foot switch, it is possible to set the box pressure freely at any time within the upper and lower operating limits. For example, when putting hands into the gloves of the box, this allows the box pressure to reach under pressure for a brief time and then to increase slightly thereafter. See Chapter 8, *Setting pressure with the foot switch*

*System component antechamber*

## 2.4 System component antechamber

Antechambers serve the transfer of materials between the box and outside areas. The antechamber atmosphere is - depending on the direction - adapted to the conditions in the box or the ambient air. This prevents a contamination of the box atmosphere.

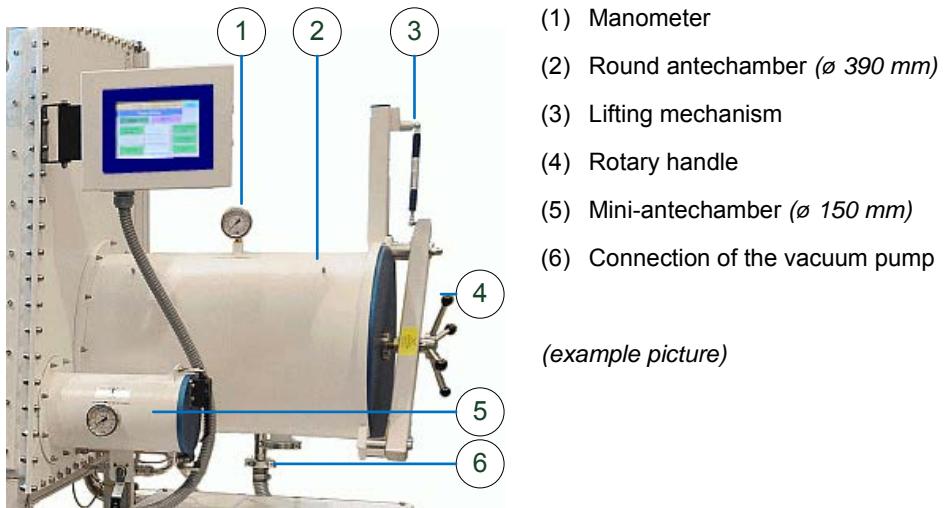
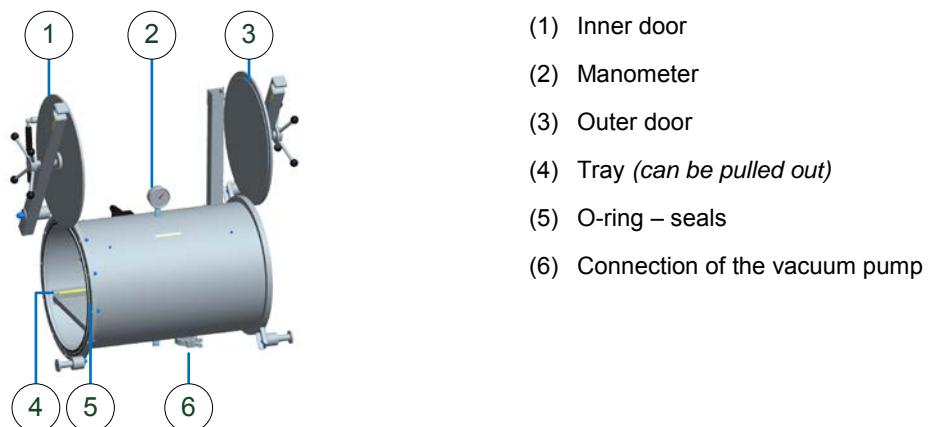
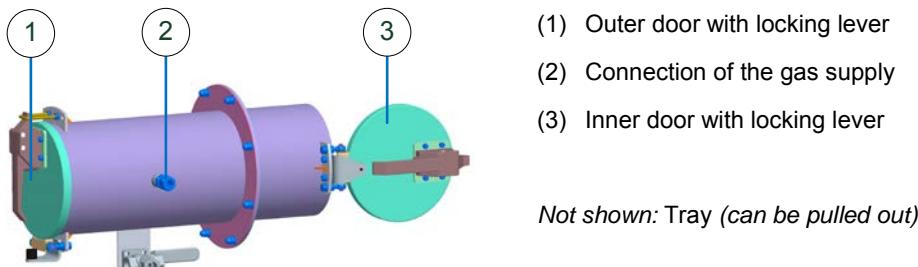
**Definitions**

<b>Vacuum antechamber (standard)</b>	The antechamber process for loading is done through evacuation *) and refilling*) – only suitable for vacuum-capable material.
<b>Purge antechamber (option)</b>	The antechamber process for loading is done through purging with inert gas (pressurized from external gas source) - suitable for vacuum-sensitive material.
<b>Loading</b>	Transfer of materials from outside to inside in the box
*) Evacuation	Removal of ambient air from the antechamber with a vacuum pump or (manually-activated) vacuum valve
*) Refilling	Refilling the evacuated antechamber with gas from the box
<b>Antechamber cycle</b>	Includes one apiece "evacuate and refill" for the defined final vacuum
<b>Unloading</b>	Transfer of materials from the box to the outside

### 2.4.1 Structure and functions

#### 2.4.1.1 Antechamber types

Function	Type	Diameter / Volume	Function	See
Main antechamber	Round antechamber	(Ø 390 mm) standard antechamber	Transfers of process materials	Chap. 8
	Rectangular antechamber	300 x 300 mm (straight model or in L-form) (customer-specific)	Loading from the side or from the front	
	Special antechamber	optional: additional dimensions (customer-specific)		
	T-antechamber	(optional in multi-box systems)	Transfer processes between 2 boxes or between box and outside environment	Chapter 10
Additional antechamber	Mini-antechamber	(Ø 150 mm)(optional)	Transfers of smaller materials	Chap. 8

*System component antechamber***Main antechamber and mini-antechamber****Structure of round antechamber ( $\varnothing$  390 mm)****Structure of mini-antechamber ( $\varnothing$  150 mm) - Option**

## System component antechamber

## 2.4.1.2 Antechamber components

## Vacuum pump

Description	Function	See
Standard: oil-sealed rotary disc pump	Generates the vacuum for the evacuation of the antechamber  - via vacuum pump of the gas purifier (VPG)  - optional: customer-specific vacuum pump (VP)	2.5 and Chap. 15

## Pressure monitoring

Description	Function	See
Manometer	Indicates the current pressure in the antechamber.	
For manual evacuation / refilling:	Visual control of the pressure with manual gas feed / removal	Chap. 9
MCS-controlled antechamber	Evaluation of the values measured by the MCS; in addition, display of the pressure on the touch panel	Chap. 9

## Gas supply

Designation	Function	See
Gas supply from the box: (standard)	Standard:  Inertising of the antechamber with box atmosphere	Chap. 4
External connection	(optional) External refilling with inert gas	Chap. 4
External feed of ambient air	(optional) Refilling of the antechamber with ambient air, valve-controlled	Chap. 4
Pressure reducer	(optional) Regulation of the input pressure with external gas supply	Chap. 4

## Operating and control elements

Designation	Function	See
Hand valves	Manual operation of the antechamber	Chap. 9
Electric valves	MCS-controlled operation of the antechamber cycle	Chap. 9

## 2.4.1.3 Additional equipment – and functions (optional):

Antechamber types	Function	See
T-antechamber( <i>in multi-box systems</i> )	Transfer processes between 2 boxes or between box and outside environment	Chap. 10
Oven antechamber	Heating up of process materials in the vacuum	Chap. 10
Antechamber functions		
Purge antechamber	Transfers of vacuum-sensitive materials Purging of the antechamber with inert gas / ambient air in over pressure	Chap. 10

## System component antechamber

## 2.4.2 Operation of vacuum antechamber

Standard systems are equipped with a vacuum antechamber.

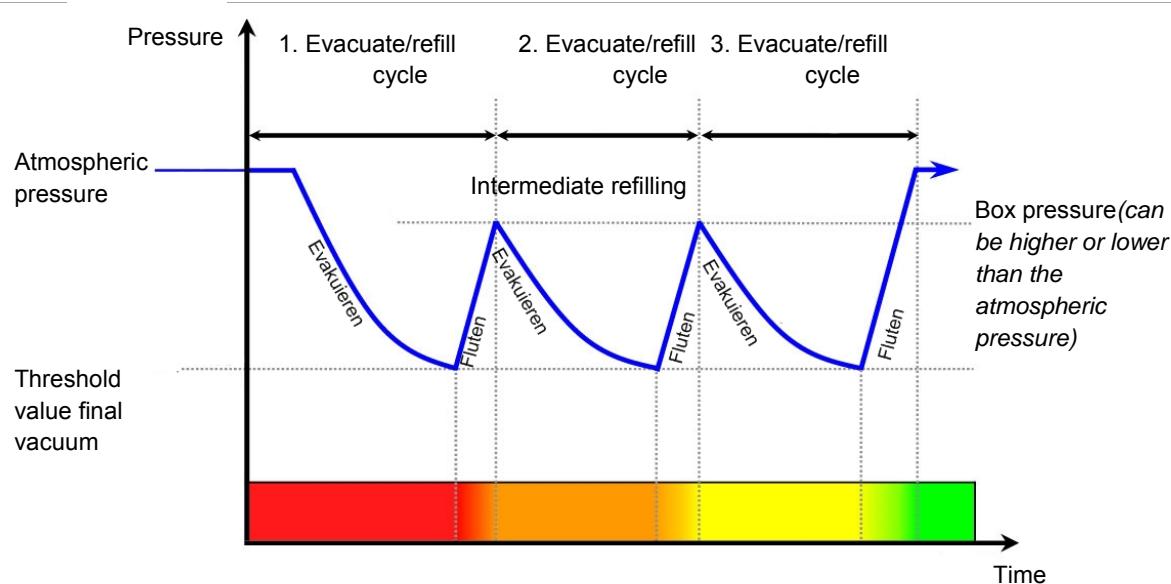
The atmosphere in the antechamber is prepared depending on the direction of the antechamber process.

**Loading the antechamber cycle (MCS-controlled):**

After evacuating the antechamber to the final vacuum the refill valve opens and refills the antechamber with gas from the box.

*Repeated evacuation and refilling increases the purity of the atmosphere:*

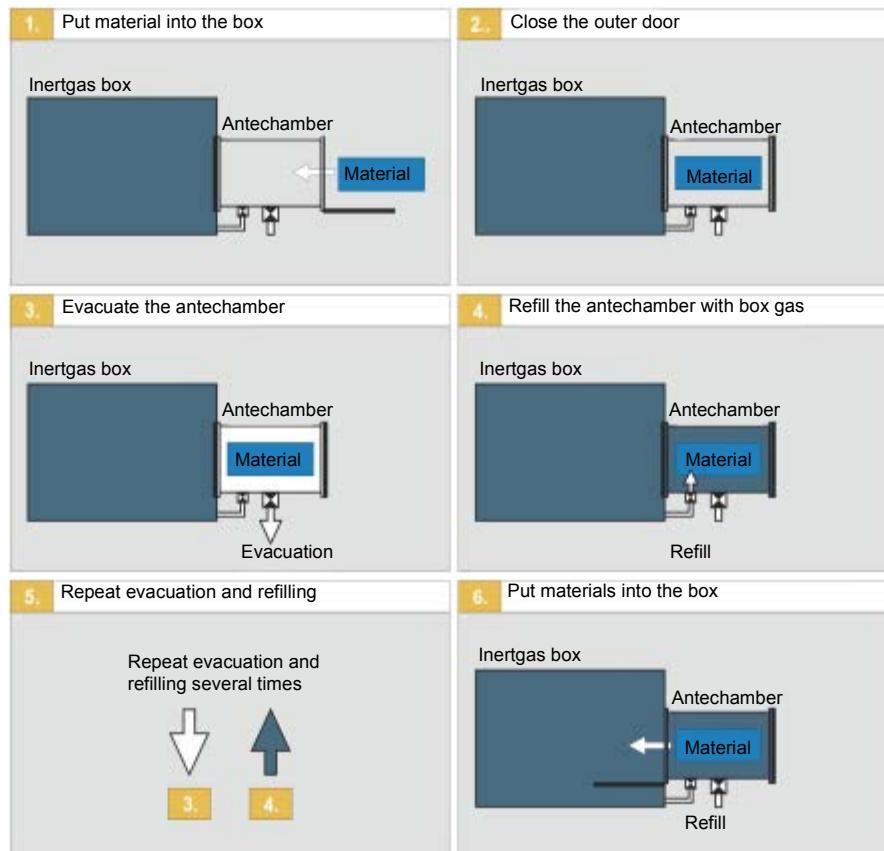
*Initial state of the antechamber atmosphere (depicted in red) to the target - high degree of purity of the inert gas atmosphere of the box (depicted in green).*



**System component antechamber****2.4.3 Principle of the transfer process vacuum antechamber**

The atmosphere in the antechamber is prepared depending on the direction of the antechamber process. This process can be controlled manually or by the MCS (see Chap. 8 Antechamber):

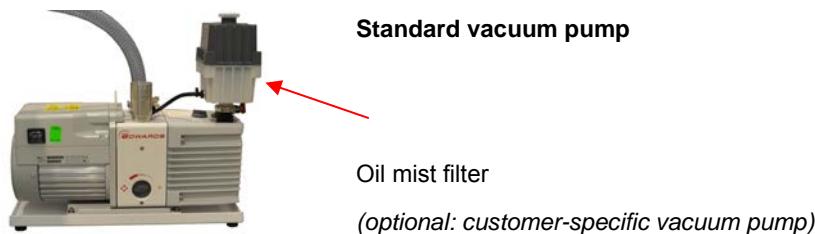
Direction	Function	Status of antechamber doors
Loading: Outside → Antechamber → Box	Adaptation of the antechamber atmosphere to the inert box atmosphere and to the box pressure	Outer door is closed – inner door can be open
Unloading: Box → Antechamber → Outside	Protection of the box atmosphere against ambient air  a) Antechamber atmosphere = Box atmosphere: direct unloading possible;  b) Antechamber atmosphere is filled with ambient air: adapt previously to box atmosphere	Inner door is closed – outer door can be open
Optional:	<i>If the box atmosphere should not get into the ambient air or with large antechambers:</i>  Refilling of the antechamber with environmental air	

*System component antechamber***Principle of the transfer process:**

**System component vacuum pump****2.5 System component vacuum pump**

In standard systems, the components are driven by a common vacuum pump of the gas purifier (VPG). Optionally, additional vacuum pumps can be used (for antechambers, solvent filters, other components).

The vacuum pump is third-party equipment.



Component	Designation	Function	See
Vacuum pump	Standard: oil-sealed vacuum pump (with oil mist filter) <i>Standard: vacuum pump gas purifier (VPG)</i> <i>optional: customer-specific vacuum pump (VP)</i>	Evacuation processes - Regeneration of the RKM reactor - Box pressure regulation - Antechamber process <i>Optional:</i> Regeneration of the reg. LMF	Supplier documentation
<i>Optional</i>	Purge kit for dry-running pumps	Purging the vacuum pump if contaminated / aggressive gases can travel from the antechamber into the vacuum pump	Chap. 10 A ff
<i>Optional</i>	Connection to in-house exhaust system	If materials that can harm the environment/health are used in the box.	Chap. 4

---

<b>3.1</b>	<b>Introduction .....</b>	<b>3-2</b>
<b>3.2</b>	<b>Safety design.....</b>	<b>3-2</b>
3.2.1	<i>Standard system .....</i>	3-2
3.2.2	<i>Process materials: Classification and assessment of substances.....</i>	3-3
3.2.3	<i>Hazard classes.....</i>	3-5
<b>3.3</b>	<b>Proper use .....</b>	<b>3-9</b>
3.3.1	<i>Product protection .....</i>	3-9
3.3.2	<i>Personal protection .....</i>	3-10
<b>3.4</b>	<b>Misuse.....</b>	<b>3-11</b>
<b>3.5</b>	<b>Potential risks (residual risks) .....</b>	<b>3-12</b>
3.5.1	<i>Dangers when handling gases.....</i>	3-12
3.5.2	<i>Mechanical dangers .....</i>	3-14
3.5.3	<i>Danger in case of error.....</i>	3-14
3.5.4	<i>Electrical hazards.....</i>	3-15
<b>3.6</b>	<b>User-specific process materials .....</b>	<b>3-16</b>
3.6.1	<i>Risk due to solvents, chemicals and gases.....</i>	3-16
<b>3.7</b>	<b>Overview: Safety + Operation of the system.....</b>	<b>3-17</b>

## Introduction

# 3 Safety

## 3.1 Introduction

This safety chapter contains basic instructions about the safety and protection design for the safe handling of the **MBRAUN** inert gas system, as well as notes about the main risks (residual risks) that can occur with the use of an inert gas system.

The specific safety instructions for the operation of the components are at the beginning of each chapter (initial safety instructions) as well as in the individual action steps (integrated safety instructions) according to EN 82079-1 and ANSI 535.6).

The safety instructions listed in the manual complete the safety guidelines for the workplace and do not invalidate these.

## 3.2 Safety design

### 3.2.1 Standard system

Structure, function and control of **MBRAUN** inert gas systems secure an inert gas atmosphere in a quality of

- O<sub>2</sub> content < 1ppm
- H<sub>2</sub>O content < 1ppm
- Leak rate < 0.05 Vol % / h (according to DIN ISO 10648-2)

The safety design for **MBRAUN** standard inert gas systems includes:

#### Product protection

Standard inert gas systems are designed primarily for product protection of the materials handled inside the box against oxygen and moisture.

Additional equipment for product protection If high-quality materials can be destroyed in case of accidental contact with ambient air, **MBRAUN** recommends system modifications for protection against malfunctions.

#### Additional equipment personal protection

Specific system modifications and additional safety equipment are always required for the redundant securing against (multiple) malfunctions in case of the use of gases and process materials that are toxic or harmful to health if they

- are flammable or explosive in contact with ambient air
- cause dangerous situations
- contain (micro) biological, pharmaceutical and nuclear applications

*See below "Proper use" and "Misuse".*

For the evaluation of the process materials used with respect to the danger levels, **MBRAUN** recommends the following websites:

<http://www.baua.de>

<http://www.coshh-essentials.org.uk>

### 3.2.2 Process materials: Classification and assessment of substances

The operator of the system is obligated to undertake a classification and assessment of the substances handled inside the inert gas box. **MBRAUN** recommends conducting a workplace hazard analysis. The operator is obligated according to the occupational protection law (ArbSchG) and also according to the accident prevention regulation "Principles of Prevention" (BGV A1 and GUV-V A1).

The hazard analysis indicates whether the substances used in an inert gas box system should be handled in over or under pressure, or whether additional safety measures are required during operation in under pressure.

The classification and assessment is necessary in order to select a system suitable for the application with the necessary system modifications and safety equipment.

The assessment and classification can be conducted with known substances taking into account the H and P statements (R and S statements) or OEL level.

#### DANGER

Unknown risks can arise from unknown bonding of process materials.

Depending on the degree of hazard, there may be consequences for health and the environment.

- In case of unknown bonding, these must be assessed as well as possible by the customer using similar substances and substance classes.

#### WARNING

If process materials are used in large quantities, with high particle content or contact time, additional risks can arise.

There can be personal injury and/or material damage.

In case of exceeding of the following factors: quantity : > 1 kg / form: very dusty / contact time: > 15 min/day

- Please contact **MBRAUN** Service.

Depending on the hazard class, various system modifications and safety equipment are necessary; these are explained in more detail in Section 3.2.3.

**Safety design**

The following table shows how the substances used can be divided roughly into hazard classes using exposure limits and H and P-signs (R and S-signs). The quantity used, the form and the contact time were not taken into account here.

**Overview of hazard classes and acceptable limits of exposure**

Pictogram	Class	Acceptable limits of exposure: µg/m <sup>3</sup> dust ppm vapour	Typical R-statements <b>Typical H-statements</b>
	<b>Class 0</b> General ventilation	1,000 – 10,000 µg/m <sup>3</sup> 50 – 500 ppm	R36, R38  <b>H319, H315</b>
	<b>Class I</b> Low and "normal" hazard	100 – 1,000 µg/ m <sup>3</sup> 5 - 50 ppm	R20, R21, R22 (not in combination with R48)  <b>H332, H312, H302 (not in combination with H317)</b>
	<b>Class II</b> Increased hazard	10 – 100 µg/ m <sup>3</sup> 0.5 – 5 ppm	R23, R24, R25 (not in combination with R48) R34 R35, R37, R41, R43 R48 with one or several R20, R21, R22  <b>H331, H311, H301 (not in combination with H317)</b>  <b>H314, H335, H318, H317</b>  <b>H372 with one or several H332, H312, H302</b>
	<b>Class III</b> Activities with carcinogenic, mutagenic and fertility-compromising hazardous materials	1.0 - 10 µg/ m <sup>3</sup> 0.05 – 0.5 ppm	R26, R27R28 Carc cat 3 R40, Muta Cat 3 R40 R48 with one or several R23, R24, R25 R60, R61, R62, R63  <b>H330, H310, H300</b>  <b>H351</b>  <b>H372 with one or several H314, H335, H318, H317</b>  <b>H360, H361</b>

Pictogram	Class	Acceptable limits of exposure: µg/m <sup>3</sup> dust ppm vapour	Typical R-statements <b>Typical H-statements</b>
	<b>Class IV</b> Special personal protection for extremely hazardous substances	0.01 – 1.0 µg/ m <sup>3</sup> 0.005 – 0.05 ppm	R42, R45, R46, R49 <b>H334, H350, H340</b>
	<b>Class EX</b> Activities with hazardous materials flammable in air		R16, R17, R18 <b>H251, H224, H225, H226</b>

Source: assembled according to:

Nigel Hirst, Mike Brocklebank and Martyn Ryder (2002): Containment System. A Design. Published by Gulf Professional Publishing. ISBN 0 7506 7612 4. Transferred to Digital Printing 2008.

### 3.2.3 Hazard classes

Distinguished are the hazard classes 0 - IV as well as EX. The hazard class 0 regards only the product protection; personal protection is not considered in initial case of error. The hazard classes I – IV include personal protection. In initial case of error, the user must be protected; the materials used are the second priority. The hazard class EX treats personal protection for the use of gases (or vapour) mixtures as well as fixed bonds that burn in air or ignite themselves.

- ! An optimal product and or personal protection can only be guaranteed with the use of the correct system modifications and safety equipment.

#### 3.2.3.1 Hazard class 0

Class 0 includes the product protection. The inert gas box is operated in over pressure in order to ensure that no oxygen or moisture penetrates the inert gas box.

Here generally system modifications and safety equipment are only necessary if the materials handled are very valuable and in case of error should not come into contact with air.

## Safety design

### 3.2.3.2 Hazard class I

Class I includes personal protection for low and "normal" hazards.

With this class, a choice can be made between an over pressure and under pressure inert gas box. The following system modification is recommended:

- Alarm in case of pressure drop or increase: in case of a spontaneous pressure drop or increase (leak), an acoustic alarm is emitted.

### 3.2.3.3 Hazard class II

Class II includes personal protection with "increased" hazard. In order to guarantee safety, the inert gas box must be operated in under pressure so that in case of a leak, the users are protected against the substances used. The following system modifications and safety equipment are required:

(MB no. only for new system)

- Alarm in case of pressure increase In case of a spontaneous increase (leak), an acoustic alarm is emitted
- Securing of pressure operation (MB no. 1507300)  
Secured pressure operation of the inert gas box between -3 and -10 mbar. Also allows the safe operation of the inert gas box if all gloveport feedthroughs are sealed with an interior or exterior sealing door. Per antechamber connected (or antechamber oven), a door lock is required.
- Securing against glove tearing (MB no. 1507301)  
In case of a glove tear, prevents a streaming out of the enclosed gas atmosphere and the escape of dust due to an inward airstream with streaming speed between 0.5 and 0.7 m/s.
- Secure unloading (MB no. 1507303)  
Automatic antechamber cycle during unloading: the antechamber is evacuated automatically and refilled before it can be opened to the outside. Always required if toxic or flammable substances are processed inside the inert gas box. A cover lock per connected antechamber or antechamber oven (1500284) is required.
- Combined exhaust (MB no. 1507304)  
The exhaust from the vacuum pump and quick-purge (if present) is combined in a connection for the connection to a customer-side exhaust. Including safe differential pressure monitoring of the customer-side exhaust

### 3.2.3.4 Hazard class III

Class III includes personal protection for activities with carcinogenic, mutagenic and fertility-compromising hazardous materials. In order to guarantee sufficient protection, the inert gas box must be operated in under pressure so that in case of a leak, the users are protected against the substances used. The following system modifications and safety equipment are required:

(MB no. only for new  
system)

- Alarm in case of pressure increase In case of a spontaneous increase (leak), an acoustic alarm is emitted
- Securing of pressure operation (MB no. 1507300) Secured pressure operation of the inert gas box between -3 and -10 mbar. Also allows the safe operation of the inert gas box if all gloveport feedthroughs are sealed with an interior or exterior sealing door. A door lock is required per antechamber connected or antechamber oven.
- Securing against glove tearing (MB no. 1507301) In case of a glove tear, prevents a streaming out of the enclosed gas atmosphere and the escape of dust due to an inward airstream with streaming speed between 0.5 and 0.7 m/s.
- Secure unloading (MB no. 1507303) Automatic antechamber cycle during unloading: the antechamber is evacuated automatically and refilled before it can be opened to the outside. Always required if toxic or flammable substances are processed inside the inert gas box. A cover lock per connected antechamber or antechamber oven (1500284) is required.
- Combined exhaust (MB no. 1507304) The exhaust from the vacuum pump and quick-purge (if present) is combined in a connection for the connection to a customer-side exhaust. Including safe differential pressure monitoring of the customer-side exhaust.
- Fail-safe PLC controller (MB no. 1507305) Replacement of the standard PLC with a fail-safe PLC with secure digital inputs and outputs and secure analog inputs. Including risk analysis for the complete system in cooperation with the principal.

### 3.2.3.5 Hazard class IV

Special personal protection for extremely hazardous substances.

Customer-specific solution Including risk analysis for the complete system in cooperation with the principal.

! Please contact **MBRAUN** Service.

### 3.2.3.6 Hazard class EX (inside)

The class EX includes personal protection for activities with hazardous materials that burn in air. In order to guarantee this, it is recommended that you operate the inert gas box in over pressure so that in case of a leak, no oxygen gets into the box. The following safety components are required:

(MB no. only for new  
system)

## Safety design

- Alarm in case of pressure increase In case of a spontaneous increase (leak), an acoustic alarm is emitted
- Secure unloading (MB no. 1507303) Automatic antechamber cycle during unloading: the antechamber is evacuated automatically and refilled before it can be opened to the outside. Always required if toxic or flammable substances are processed inside the inert gas box. A cover lock per connected antechamber or antechamber oven (1500284) is required.
- Combined exhaust (MB no. 1507304) The exhaust from the vacuum pump and quick-purge (if present) is combined in a connection for the connection to a customer-side exhaust. Including safe differential pressure monitoring of the customer-side exhaust
- Fail-safe PLC controller (MB no. 1507305) Replacement of the standard PLC 313C with a fail-safe PLC 315F with secure digital inputs and outputs and secure analog inputs. Including risk analysis for the complete system in cooperation with the principal
- Safe oxygen measurement (MB no. 1507306) Secured EX zone shift of the inert gas box atmosphere if gases that burn in air can occur in concentrations inside the inert gas box, for which the gas mixture would burn in air, there is a secure zone shift inside the box through securing of operation at <2% oxygen even in case of error. Including oxygen measurement with self-check and secure quick-purge in case of error. Including upgrade of all pressure sensors to "EX model". Including upgrade of the gloveport feedthrough to "conductive".

### 3.3 Proper use

#### 3.3.1 Product protection

An **MBRAUN** inert gas box is - together with a gas purifier - used in order to generate and maintain an inert gas atmosphere in a hermetically-sealed workspace.

The proper use is use for product protection. Moist and/or oxygen-sensitive materials can be handled and processed within this atmosphere. The processing is done manually using gloves or automated using special handling systems.

By default, operation with nitrogen, argon or helium as inert gas or as mixture is prescribed. Other gases or gas mixtures of non-reactive gases are possible, however can in certain cases require a modification of the system or additional protective measures.

By default, if the antechamber is used for transfer in material/substances into the glovebox/enclosure, the completion of a full antechamber cycle is mandatory (otherwise the O<sub>2</sub> concentration within the glovebox would rise to a level which causes system response).

**MBRAUN** inert gas systems are intended exclusively for professional use.

- Only use the system as described in the operating manual!
- Only personnel may be used who met the requirements defined in this operating manual!
- **MBRAUN** standard systems are not set up by the manufacturer for applications that require secured personal protection.

System modifications can also be required with use of hazard class 0 materials:

- For use of high-quality materials that can be destroyed if they reach the ambient air in case of system malfunctions.

#### Proper use

##### 3.3.2 Personal protection

For applications that require secured personal protection in addition to product protection, special system modifications and safety equipment are required; these are not included in the scope of delivery of the standard system.

If one or more of the following points apply, personal protection is required:

- Substances that can cause dangerous situations if they reach the ambient air in case of system malfunction.
- Substances which, if they reach ambient air in case of system malfunctions, are easily flammable or explosive.
- Pharmaceutical and nuclear applications.
- Extremely toxic or harmful materials

**MBRAUN** creates a concept for secured personal protection in consultation with the customer if substances or gases of hazard classes II, III, IV or EX are used in the system.

---

! Please contact **MBRAUN** Service if your application falls into one of the categories mentioned above or if you have questions about this.

---

## 3.4 Misuse

### DANGER

Risk to life, health and the environment!

All applications that require secured personal protection are not permitted for standard systems:

- Substances that can cause dangerous situations if they reach the ambient air in case of system malfunction.
- Substances which, if they reach ambient air in case of system malfunctions, are easily flammable or explosive.
- (Micro) biological, pharmaceutical and nuclear applications
- Extremely toxic or harmful materials
- Operation with reactive or toxic gases or gas mixtures as intentional box atmosphere (e.g. gas mixture of inert gas and hydrogen or carbon dioxide)

For these applications, special system modifications and safety equipment are required, which are not included in the standard scope of delivery (Class I-IV).

- The system may not be rebuilt or changed without authorisation!
- The bridging of end switches, valves and other control components is forbidden!
- The system may not be used outside of the technical data and operating limits specified in this operating manual!

### DANGER

Risk of personal injury!

The system may not be operated if:

- There is visible damage
- It is not working in the framework of the specifications
- It was not stored properly
- If it was subjected to extreme, improper transport conditions

If one of these points is relevant, then

- ▶ Take the system out of operation!
- ▶ Secure it against unauthorised or unintentional commissioning!
- ▶ Make contact with the **MBRAUN** Service Department!

## Potential risks (residual risks)

### 3.5 Potential risks (residual risks)

#### 3.5.1 Dangers when handling gases

In case of error or operating error, there can be dangers in the handling of inert gases.

##### 3.5.1.1 Risk of suffocation

###### DANGER

With a high concentration of inert gases, there is a risk of suffocation! Below an oxygen concentration of < 18%, a loss of consciousness, irreversible damage and death may occur!

- ▶ Never put your head or entire body in the interior space of an inert gas box or antechamber.
- ▶ Do not breathe in gases!
- ▶ Always ensure sufficient ventilation of the work area / workspace
- ▶ Before performing maintenance work inside the inert gas box or the antechamber, the inert gas atmosphere in the box must be replaced with room air. *Follow the instructions in the chapter "Inspection and Maintenance".*

If the specifications for the set-up of the system cannot be adhered to:

- ▶ Use a wearable personal oxygen warning device that warns you if there is a critical lack of oxygen concentration in the ambient air.

### 3.5.1.2 Risk of combustion and explosion

For the handling of process materials in the box, please follow the instructions above for "Proper use".

#### DANGER

Risk to life when handling combustible or explosive gases!

There is a risk of explosion for gases whose self-combustion temperature  $\leq 60^{\circ}\text{C}$  if they come into contact with oxygen (e.g. with ambient air!) into contact with high temperatures of the devices used in the workspace!

This is especially relevant with use of solvents or hydrogen concentration  $\geq 4\%$ !

- ▶ It must absolutely be ensured that the concentration of a hydrogen/oxygen mixture within an inert gas box never exceeds the specified safety limits !
- ▶ The user is responsible for strict adherence to the safety limits!
- ▶ With use of combustible or explosive gases, additional safety equipment is required that is not a component of the **MBRAUN** standard inert gas box system.
- ▶ If necessary, contact the **MBRAUN** Service Department.

#### For use of hydrogen mixtures, distinguish:

Use of hydrogen mixtures in the box	<b>DANGER</b> The critical limit value of 4% must be under run significantly - additional safety equipment is required!
Use of hydrogen mixtures for the regeneration of reactors RKM	Limit value 5-10%
<b>Use of hydrogen mixtures as regeneration gas for reactors (RKM)</b>	
To regenerate the reactors (RKM), a hydrogen mixtures in a concentration of 5-10% H <sub>2</sub> share is used (see <i>Chapter 4, Installation</i> ).  This gas mixture serves as process gas for the reduction of the Cu catalyst.  This process takes place in a closed system and is secured by <b>MBRAUN</b> in defined processes (see <i>chapter Gas purifier, regenerating</i> ).	

---

#### CAUTION

---

Exceeding the hydrogen concentration  $>10\%$  causes overheating of the reactor during regeneration!

- ▶ Be sure to adhere to the specified hydrogen concentration of 5-10%!
-

*Potential risks (residual risks)*

### 3.5.2 Mechanical dangers

#### 3.5.2.1 Risk of crushing on moving parts and rotating devices in the box

**CAUTION**

Risk of injury to hands and arms due to crushing, bending, cutting and shearing movements on moving parts! Risk of injury due to catching in rotating equipment in the box!

- ▶ Keep hands and arms out of the range of moving parts!
- ▶ With the use of (fast) moving parts and equipment in the box, protection against reaching in (monitoring by light curtains + STOP function) may be required.

### 3.5.3 Danger in case of error

#### 3.5.3.1 Risk of injury due to ejected materials

**WARNING**

Personal injury in case of error

Risk of injury due to ejection of material with use of mechanical, pneumatic and vacuum-technical components!

- ▶ Always adhere to maintenance cycles
- ▶ Repair work on components may only be performed by authorised personnel
- ▶ Keep hands and arms out of the danger area!

#### 3.5.3.2 Risk of injury in case of system damage and operating error

**WARNING**

Risk of injury due to damage to the system and operating error

- ▶ In case of damage to and safety defects on the system: take the system out of operation immediately and inform the service personnel!
- ▶ Do not open the system during operation or in case of power failures!
- ▶ Safety doors, side walls, separating walls, panes and doors may not - except in case of service - be removed.
- ▶ Follow the operating manual
- ▶ In case of doubt, contact **MBRAUN** Service.

### 3.5.4 Electrical hazards

#### DANGER

Risk of personal injury due to electrical voltage such as uncontrolled muscle reactions, crippling, burns or death.

- ▶ In case of electrical shock, inform the emergency physician immediately
- ▶ Only a trained electrician may open the control cabinet.
- ▶ Switch off the main switch before opening the control cabinet.

Components such as condensers and contacts are still energised even after they are switched off!

- ▶ All work on the control cabinet and the electrical system may only be performed by a trained electrician.

Before working on the electrical system and the electronics:

- ▶ Remove the mains plug from the outlet or de-energise the mains connection!

The system may not be operated with an open control cabinet door!

#### DANGER

Risk of personal injury and property damage due to electrical voltage and impermissible currents!

- ▶ No provisional fuses and/or short-circuit fuses may be used!
- ▶ Do not change or replace current-carrying lines!

The mains connection must be made according to local guidelines. The system must always be earthed, see Chap. 13 Wiring diagrams.

#### 3.5.4.1 Electrostatic discharge

#### DANGER

Risk of personal injury and property damage due to electrostatic discharge!

When working with plastic parts, hoses, tubes, cables and the system itself, there can be electrostatic charges and unexpected discharges. This can ignite solvents or process chemicals if these are not subjected to the inert gas atmosphere.

Earth the entire system sufficiently → see *Chap. 13 Wiring diagrams*

## User-specific process materials

### 3.6 User-specific process materials

Solvents, chemicals and process gases are not supplied by **MBRAUN**. All required substances are provided and used by the user.

The safe use of these is the responsibility of the customer. Please follow the instructions above for "Proper use" (product protection and personal protection) as well as for hazard analysis.

#### 3.6.1 Risk due to solvents, chemicals and gases

##### DANGER

Risk of injury and damage!

Gases and chemical can be flammable, explosive and/or toxic!

Chemicals released can react with one another and cause unexpected and/or unknown risks.

Solvents can destroy seals of the inert gas box or other components (e.g. cooling) or the material of the gloves. Solvent vapours are absorbed by the reactor material and can reduce its capacity to absorb water vapour.

Please note the following:

- ▶ The user is responsible for the proper handling of gases and chemicals.
- ▶ Classify the hazard classes of the process materials used.
- ▶ All guidelines such as EU directive 98/24/EC, Control of Substance Hazardous to Health (COSHH) must be adhered to.
- ▶ Heed all applicable safety regulations and safety data sheets (material data sheets) of the manufacturer.
- ▶ Always mark chemical containers and supply lines with the appropriate labels and warning labels.
- ▶ Wear personal protective equipment (PPE) according to the gases, processes and process materials used (e.g. breathing protection full mask with suitable filter, protective gloves and eye protection).
- ▶ Ensure sufficient ventilation and solvent exhaust!
- ▶ Do not breathe in gases!
- ▶ Keep away sources of ignition! Do not smoke!

If regular work with organic solvents will be done in the inert gas box, the gas purifier should be equipped with a solvent filter and a solvent sensor.

## Overview: Safety + Operation of the system

### 3.7 Overview: Safety + Operation of the system

The operating and operating-relevant safety instructions are in the respective chapters.

Preceding safety instructions introduce the operation of the function or components in question

Integrated safety instructions are placed before a sequence of operations or an action step

#### Preceding safety instructions

Safety	Description	Product protection	Personal protection	Environmental protection	Chapter
<b>Installation &amp; organisational preparation</b>	Damage to the system and additional risks due to improper installation	x			4.2.1
	Preventable risks due to lacking safety markings on the system	x	x		4.2.1
	Health and environmental hazards in case of incorrect handling of gases → Trained professionals		x		4.2.1
	Health hazards due to (contaminated) exhaust gases → Connection of in-house exhaust system		x		4.2.1
	Hazards due to system expansions, customer-specific processes, process materials, gases → Measures in advance hazard/risk analysis, safety equipment and functions, marking of the system, discharge of exhaust, waste		x	x	4.2.2
	→ Measures for safe operation: SOP, behaviour in case of emergency, training	x	x	x	4.2.2
<b>Operating the system</b>	Basic principles of operation				6
	Operating Manual	x	x		6.2.1
	Personnel	x	x	x	6.2.2
	Responsibilities for operation of the system	x	x		6.2.2.1
	Protective equipment / additional equipment		x		6.2.2.2
	Environment			x	6.2.3
	Damage to the system		x		6.10.1
	Disposal		x	x	6.11.1

## Overview: Safety + Operation of the system

Safety	Description	Product protection	Personal protection	Environmental protection	Chapter
<b>Gas purifier</b>	- Damage to the gas purifier due to ambient air / or - Compromising of the gas purifier performance due to ambient air	x			7.2.1
	Regeneration - risks with use of H2 mixtures > 10%	x			7.2.2
	Risks with use of solvents - solvent filters (LMF) - parallel operation / exhaust gases		x		7.2.3
	Risks with use of solvents - solvent filters (LMF) - consequences in case of operation with saturated LMF	x	x		7.2.3
<b>Inertgas box</b>					
	Damage to the reactors during circulation operation with ambient air	x			8.2.1
	Damage to the sensors during circulation operation with ambient air	x	x		8.2.1
	Risk of suffocation in case of operating error when opening an inertised box		x		8.2.2
	Risk of suffocation in case of error with permanently-activated automatic box purge		x		8.2.2
	Damage due to extreme pressure relationships (glove tear) - in case of harmless process materials	x			8.2.2.1
	Mech. damage due to extreme pressure development with use of dangerous process materials		x		8.2.2.2 9.2.1.1
	Material damage to gloves	x			8.3.5

## Overview: Safety + Operation of the system

Safety	Description	Product protection	Personal protection	Environmental protection	Chapter
<b>Antechambers</b>	Risks due to operating errors during the antechamber processes depending on processes/process materials used	x	x		9.2
	Transport containers: contamination of the box atmosphere due to enclosed ambient air	x			9.2
	Transport container, not vacuum-suitable: risk of explosion	x	x		9.2
	Antechamber doors + antechamber atmosphere:				9.2.1
	Loading: disturbance of the box atmosphere by oxygen + moisture: status of the antechamber atmosphere + heed doors!	x			9.2.1.1
	Unloading: compromises due to inert gases + nitrogen oxide	x	x		9.2.1.2
	After completing antechamber processes: compromises of box atmosphere - environment	x	x		9.2.1.3
<b>Maintenance</b>					
Maintenance cycles	Risk of health and environmental damage due to material damage in case of non-adherence to maintenance cycles		x	x	12.2
Qualification of personnel	Risks to people and the environment due to improperly-performed inspection and maintenance work.		x	x	12.2
	Risk of suffocation or health hazards when opening boxes under inert gas atmosphere!		x		12.2
Electrical	Risk to people due to electrical shock in case of improper handling of electrical components!		x		12.2
Process materials	Health and environmental risks due to gases, processes and process materials used!		x	x	12.2

## Overview: Safety + Operation of the system

Safety	Description	Product protection	Personal protection	Environmental protection	Chapter
Sensors, particle filter	<p>Personal injury and environmental damage due to contamination through hazardous processes/process materials!</p> <p>Sensors and particle filters are constantly subjected to the gas flow in the box/the gas purifier. When using hazardous materials in the inert gas box, people and the environment are at risk!</p>		x	x	12.2
Gloves	<p>Ambient air penetrates the box due to damaged gloves and disturbs the inert gas atmosphere. The box atmosphere can escape and cause personal injuries.</p> <p>Depending on the gases and processes/process materials used, there can be material damage and/or personal injury (risk of suffocation!).</p>	x	x		12.5.2
Sensors	<p>The sensor is constantly subjected to the gas flow. With the use of hazardous materials in the inert gas box, there is the risk of a contamination.</p> <p>The exchange process described here is not suitable for the use of hazardous materials.</p>		x		12.5.4
	Personal injuries due to chemical burns to the skin and the eyes with use of phosphoric acid!		x		12.5.4.2
LMF	Solvent filter: risk of personal injury and material and environmental damage due to remaining solvents/vapours during changing of the filter medium!		x	x	12.5.9

<b>4.1</b>	<b>Introduction .....</b>	<b>4-2</b>
<b>4.2</b>	<b>Safety during preparation and installation.....</b>	<b>4-3</b>
4.2.1	Standard system .....	4-3
4.2.2	Specific: use of hazardous processes/process materials.....	4-4
<b>4.3</b>	<b>On-site conditions.....</b>	<b>4-5</b>
4.3.1	Installation site .....	4-5
<b>4.4</b>	<b>Transport .....</b>	<b>4-7</b>
4.4.1	Heed transport goods identification.....	4-7
4.4.2	Transport in wooden crates / on pallets.....	4-8
4.4.3	Lift transport goods from the pallet, bring them to the installation location.....	4-9
<b>4.5</b>	<b>Connection preparations - overview.....</b>	<b>4-13</b>
<b>4.6</b>	<b>Gases and accessories.....</b>	<b>4-14</b>
4.6.1	Gas types .....	4-14
4.6.2	Operating as.....	4-14
4.6.3	Purge gas (purge function - BS).....	4-15
4.6.4	Regeneration gas.....	4-16
<b>4.7</b>	<b>Vacuum pumps and accessories .....</b>	<b>4-19</b>
<b>4.8</b>	<b>Cooling water and accessories .....</b>	<b>4-20</b>
4.8.1	Water cooling (optional) .....	4-20
<b>4.9</b>	<b>Connecting the system.....</b>	<b>4-21</b>
4.9.1	Workstation UNILab Pro (Plus with different pipework) SP/DP .....	4-21
4.9.2	Connecting the operating gas .....	4-24
4.9.3	Connecting the regeneration gas .....	4-24
4.9.4	Connecting disposal line for regeneration gas .....	4-24
4.9.5	Disposal line for vacuum pump exhaust.....	4-25
4.9.6	Connecting the cooling water .....	4-25
4.9.7	Installing sensors (optional).....	4-25
4.9.8	Mains supply .....	4-26
4.9.9	Potential equalisation .....	4-27
<b>4.10</b>	<b>Installing additional components.....</b>	<b>4-28</b>
<b>4.11</b>	<b>Acceptance .....</b>	<b>4-28</b>

## Introduction

# 4 Preparation and Installation

## 4.1 Introduction

This chapter is intended for the operator and personnel responsible for the operation and service of the **MBRAUN** system.

The delivered **MBRAUN** system – including this operating manual – offers the technical and process-specific conditions for the safe operation of an inert gas system.

Prerequisite for the safety of the system is the proper preparation of the conditions on-site. The operator is responsible for making sure that the organisational prerequisites for the safe handling of the system are provided.

Follow especially the details in the safety and operator duties chapter and the on-site conditions (Chap. 4.2 and 4.4).

### Preparing the on-site conditions

- Ambient conditions
- Floor conditions, carrying capacity
- Connections: mains and gas supply, coolant connections

### Check hazard potential

- ▶ Check the process materials and processes used for their hazard potential (including their mutual reactions and final products).
- ▶ Follow the instructions in the safety chapter (Chap. 3).
- ▶ If necessary, set up additional equipment and functions
- ▶ If necessary, create a standard flow plan / standard operating procedure (SOP) for the specific conditions on-site:

#### Standard flow plan - standard operating procedure (SOP)

- ▶ Specify the procedures according to your specific hazard and risk analysis:
  - Heed the relevant data sheets and standards
  - Agree on the procedures with your fire safety officer/radiation safety officer
  - Always mark chemical containers and supply lines with the appropriate labels and warning labels.
  - Use vacuum-resistant closed containers
  - Use personal protective equipment (PPE): keep breathing protection full mask (with suitable filter), protective gloves and eye protection at the ready

## Safety during preparation and installation

### Training of the personnel / defining responsibilities

Train the personnel so that they can operate the system properly.  
(See also Chap. 6.2).

### Installation and commissioning

**MBRAUN** recommends having the installation and commissioning performed by **MBRAUN** trained personnel.

If you perform the installation and initial commissioning yourself:

- ▶ Follow the details for the installation and the instructions for commissioning in *Chapter 6*.

## 4.2 Safety during preparation and installation

### **NOTICE**

Improper preparation of the installation of the system can cause damage to the system and additional risks.

- ▶ Follow the instructions for installation and commissioning (See *Chap. 4 and 6*).
- ▶ Installation and dismantling should only be performed by qualified trained personnel.

### 4.2.1 Standard system

The system has safety markings that should protect the operator against foreseeable dangers.



#### **WARNING**

Missing safety marking on the system causes preventable dangers!

- ▶ Always keep all safety markings on the system visible and legible

The accessories described in this chapter (gases, pressure regulators, etc.) are required for the connection of the system, but are not a component of the scope of delivery.



#### **WARNING**

Health and environmental hazards in case of incorrect handling of gases!

- ▶ The system must only be connected by trained personnel
- ▶ Attach a cut-off valve to the gas supply line

## Safety during preparation and installation

The safe discharge of exhaust is the responsibility of the customer. **MBRAUN** assumes no liability for contamination of the surrounding atmosphere and any resulting health and environmental damage.



### **WARNING**

Health and environmental hazards due to (contaminated) exhaust gas!

With the use of toxic or radioactive materials:

- ▶ Do not discharge gases into the environment.
- ▶ Connect the exhaust from the system to an in-house exhaust system.

### 4.2.2

## Specific: use of hazardous processes/process materials

### Additional system equipment



### **WARNING**

System expansions and/or customer-specific processes/process materials/gases can cause specific hazards to health and the environment, depending on the degree of hazard of the materials used.

With the use of processes/process materials that present a hazard to health or the environment:

- ▶ Conduct a hazard analysis and if necessary a risk analysis
- ▶ If necessary, install additional safety equipment and functions
- ▶ Mark the system/system components with warning signs
- ▶ Connect the exhaust to an in-house exhaust system
- ▶ Ensure waste disposal according to valid national guidelines
- ▶ In case of questions, please contact **MBRAUN** Service.

### Preparation for the operation of a system with hazardous processes/process materials



### **WARNING**

Depending on the type and degree of hazard of the processes/process materials used, the operator of a system is subjected to a specific risk.

- ▶ Conduct a hazard analysis and if necessary a risk analysis
- ▶ Take measures for the safe handling of the processes/process materials according to your hazard or risk analysis
- ▶ Specify measures for behaviour in case of emergency (fire, escape or large quantities of inert gas, electrical failure)
- ▶ Summarize the measures if necessary in a standard operating procedure (SOP)/standard flow plan and hang it up where the operator can see it
- ▶ Train the operating personnel for behaviour in case of emergency

## 4.3 On-site conditions

### 4.3.1 Installation site

The location for **MBRAUN** systems must be checked for the following on-site conditions.

#### Prerequisites:

Room	Room temperature: +15°C and +30°C dry room climate Good room ventilation
Area	Floor level and even, no anglesCarrying capacity: approx. 500 kg/m <sup>2</sup>
Distance	Minimum distance to walls and objects 600 mm sufficient freedom to move in the work areas, e.g. glove areas, antechamber area and service areas
Room volume	The room volume must be significantly larger than the volume of the housing of the inert gas box.

If the system is a component of other systems, then the regulations and documentation for these systems with respect to the location must also be taken into consideration. In case of questions, please contact **MBRAUN** Service.

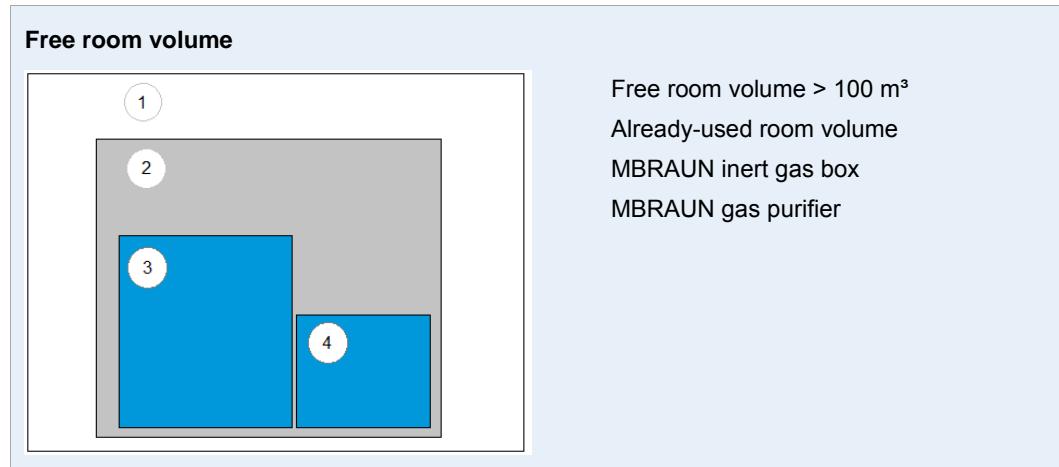
#### Securing of the installation location

For the case that the on-site conditions\*) cannot be adhered to or the securing of specific devices in case of error is required, **MBRAUN** recommends safety measures such as, for example:

Exhaust system	Monitoring of the function of the exhaust system and warning in case of disturbances/failure of the exhaust system
Oxygen content in the room air	Monitoring of the room air + O <sub>2</sub> warning device: alarm in case of under running of a minimum oxygen concentration
Redundant gas shut-off	Safety kit for the redundant gas shut-off of the gas supply line (not included in standard scope of delivery; please contact <b>MBRAUN</b> Service).
Keep personal protective equipment (PPE) / oxygen masks ready	In front of the work room In the work room Personal O <sub>2</sub> warning device
Mark room	In case of alarm, only enter the room with an oxygen mask

**On-site conditions****In case of inert gas supply from compressed gas bottles:**

- \*) If the customer draws his inert gas supply from a compressed gas bottle (200 bar, 50 l = 10 Nm<sup>3</sup>), there is a risk only if the free room volume is smaller than 100 m<sup>3</sup>.

**With installation of the system components in different locations:**

If the gas purifier and inert gas box are installed in different locations, the instruction applies for both components of the system.

In case of questions, please contact **MBRAUN** Service.

**Danger in case of failure to follow the on-site conditions****DANGER**

Risk of suffocation in case of failure to follow the on-site conditions!

Standard systems: when purging with operating gas or when opening inert gas-filled antechambers, inert gas escapes. This can cause a risk of suffocation!

Adhere to on-site conditions

- The remaining room volume must be significantly larger than the interior volume of the inert gas box.
- Set up the system in an area with good ventilation
- If possible, discharge exhaust via an exhaust gas discharge system!

If you cannot fulfil one or more of these conditions or if you would like advice about your specific on-site conditions:

- Please contact **MBRAUN** Service.

## 4.4 Transport

Before delivery and installation of an inert gas system, the customer receives the "Delivery and connection preparation" check list in order to be able to check all prerequisites for the transport and installation conditions.

Delivery of the system components takes place on pallets (woven in / pallets with planking or wooden crate).

For subsequent transport on the customer's premises or within the building, take into account:

- The room for the installation of the system is prepared
- The transport paths (width/radii of the floors, staircase, lift) are sufficiently dimensioned and freely accessible

To be provided:

- Suitable transport vehicles – depending on the type of delivery: crane, lift truck (pallet truck), lift vehicle
- Lift, wooden slats, tools

### 4.4.1 Heed transport goods identification



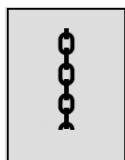
Heed for transport and storage

**Do not put weight on or stack transport goods**



The centre of gravity of the transport goods is generally in the middle

If it is not in the middle, there is a marking on the transport crate



Optional for heavy load:

Specification of the attachment points

Gross weight specification

On the transport crate

Net weight, dimensions:

See delivery papers

## Transport

### 4.4.2 Transport in wooden crates / on pallets

#### Prerequisite

- > Lift vehicle: minimum length: 2m
- > Keep tools ready: nail puller, tin shears



#### Transport to the installation room

- Transport transport goods with lift vehicle
- Open the wooden crates with crowbar, nail puller



#### Loosen locks on the transport goods

 **WARNING** Bands are under tension! They can fly off when cutting and cause facial injuries!



- Wear goggles
- Stand to the side of the tension direction
- Cut tension bands slowly (tin shears)
- Remove plastic film

! The rest of the transport depends on the type of system delivered.

#### 4.4.3 Lift transport goods from the pallet, bring them to the installation location

##### **⚠️ WARNING**

Risk of tipping! Risk of injury!

- ▶ Heed the position of the centre of gravity! of the transport goods!

##### 4.4.3.1 Transport of a box + antechamber (without gas purifier)

- !** For boxes with antechambers, the lifting point is nearly in the middle, however slightly offset in the direction of the antechamber.

- For systems with antechamber: Pick-up point in the middle below the box, slightly offset
- For systems with high centre of gravity: heed the marking on the system. (If there is no marking: pick-up point in the middle below the box)

##### **NOTICE**

- ▶ Damage to the box/the frame from the forks of the lift vehicle (pallet truck)!
- ▶ Protect the edges of the box with wooden bar, as described below



**Preventing damage to the frame**

- ▶ Place a wooden bar on the forks of the lift vehicle
- ▶ Move the carriers of the fork lift up until they are a little below the box
- ▶ Align wooden bars so that they fall in line with the protruding screws
- The system is ready for transport

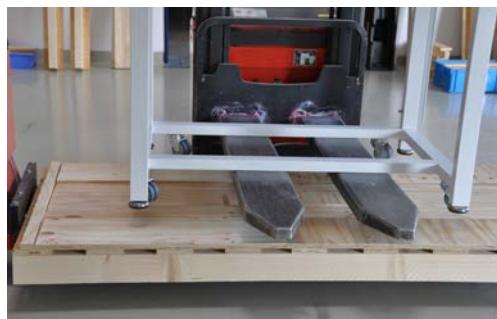


**Transporting the system:**

- ▶ Start up lift vehicle
- ▶ Bring transport goods to the intended location

**⚠️ WARNING** Risk of damage and injury due to tipping/rolling load! Heed the notes below for setting down the transport goods!

## Transport



### Lowering from the pallet

- ▶ Approach with the lift vehicle below the frame - a bit offset from the middle in the direction of the antechamber.

**⚠ WARNING** Risk of damage and injury due to tipping/rolling load! Heed the notes below for setting down the transport goods!



### Setting down the transport goods

Before setting down the transport goods:

- ▶ Make sure that the weight is set evenly on the max. moved-out plate feet
- ▶ Screw in the plate feet only afterwards
- ▶ Move system on rollers slowly to its final location
- ▶ Align system
- ▶ Screw plate feet out far enough that the rollers are no longer in contact with the floor
- This way, the system stands firmly on the floor.

#### 4.4.3.2 Transport of a system with an integrated gas purifier

Example: MOD box:



Lift Angles

- ▶ Screw 2 mounting lift angles on each of 4 corners/fastening points of a MOD-box

- ▶ Approach with lift
- ▶ Use transport crane

**⚠ WARNING** Property damage + risk of injury due to tipping/rolling load! Heed the notes below for setting down the transport goods! Heed the notes above for setting down the transport goods!



Ring screw

*Optional for heavy loads*

- ▶ Attach lift on pre-mounted ring screws

#### 4.4.3.3 Transport of a gas purifier with crane



##### Gas purification system

- ▶ Sling lift around the 4 corners of the gas purifier

##### **WARNING**

Damage and electrical hazard!

The cable duct runs under the housing of the gas purifier (marked in red).

With improper transport, the cable duct may be damaged! This can cause malfunctions and electrical hazards!

- ▶ Transport the system properly

##### **Do not tip!**



- ▶ Fasten lift on the crane
- ▶ Lift the crane hook carefully
- ▶ Check whether the gas purifier sits well in the sling
- ▶ Only then lift from the pallet
- ▶ and bring to the installation location
- ▶ Even setting down of the transport goods on the four rollers (*if no plate feet*).
- ▶ Install and align system

## Transport

### 4.4.3.4 Transport at a later time

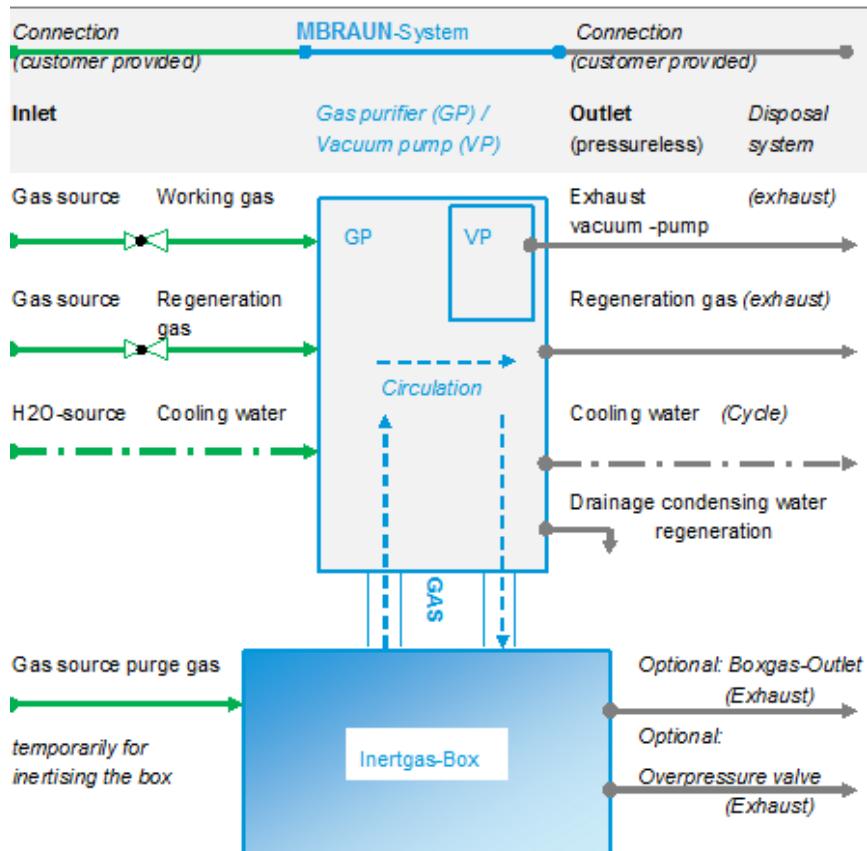
When transporting at a later time, also consider:

- Use wooden transport crates
- Transport on pallets
- Stabilise the transport goods against slipping with profiled timbers, aligning the rollers
- Secure loose parts (such as touch panel, antechamber tray) with bubble wrap
- Pack in film
- Transport in air-suspended truck required

(Follow the check-list "Preparation for delivery and connection" from MBRAUN)

## 4.5 Connection preparations - overview

Before delivery, the user receives an information sheet about the required connection accessories for his system. The following details provide a general overview.



Pressure reducing valves are not part of delivery, installation is in responsibility of the customer

Gas purifier	INPUT (→ source for the gas purifier)			OUTPUT (→ for disposal equipment)		
	Input pressure – from source	Pressure / temp.	Connection		Connection	Pressure Exhaust
Operating gas / control gas	≤ 200 bar / ≤ 20 MPa	5.5-6.0 bar / 0.5-0.6 MPa	10 mm	from gas purifier + vacuum pump	KF 40 /ø 44.5 mm	Pressureless max < 0 mbar to min - 2mbar
Regeneration gas	≤ 200 bar / ≤ 20 MPa	0.3 - 0.5 bar / 30 - 50 kPa	10 mm			
Cooling water (optional)	2.0 bar / 0.2 MPa	max. 20° C	10 mm			pressureless
Box			KF40			
Purge gas (inertisation of the box from ext. source)	≤ 200 bar / ≤ 20 MPa	5.5 - 6.0 bar / 0.55 - 0.6 MPa	12 mm		KF 40 /ø 44.5 mm	pressureless

## Gases and accessories

### 4.6 Gases and accessories

#### 4.6.1 Gas types

In standard systems, nitrogen, argon or helium can be used as gas types. For regeneration gas, **MBRAUN** recommends always using the same gas type as the operating and purge gas. If argon is the operating gas, then argon should be used as purge gas and an argon/hydrogen mixture should be used as regeneration gas.

- ! Gas type: in general, only the gases named above may be used.

Other gas mixtures - including those with carbon dioxide and hydrogen - are possible. However, this requires special system preparations by **MBRAUN**, which are not a component of a standard system.



#### WARNING

Exceeding the concentration of hydrogen in the regeneration gas of > 10% is not permitted!

- *Heed the safety instructions in the chapter safety, hazards when handling gases.*

#### 4.6.2 Operating as

Operating as	Type / mass	Use
Gas type	Nitrogen, Argon or Helium	
Purity	Medium purity from bottles or other supply equipment (recommended: 4.8 or better)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Construction and maintenance of the pure gas atmosphere: pressure regulation and purging of the box</li> </ul>
Quantity	Constant supply for operation of the system	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Valve control: pressure gas for electro-pneumatic valves and pneumatic controller</li> </ul>
Accessories		
Pressure reducing valve		Pressure regulation of the operating gas
Pressure	200 bar (20 MPa) primary, 5.5-6.0 bar (0.55 – 0.6 MPa) secondary	
Flow	Flow rate 250 l/min	
Connection	Ø 10 mm cut ring-screw connection	
Supply line		Connection of the gas source with the system connection operating gas IN
Material	Ø 10 mm stainless steel pipe	
Connection	Ø 10 mm cut ring-screw connection	
Length	Optional (length as required):	

### 4.6.3 Purge gas (purge function - BS)

Purge Gas	Type	Use
Gas type	Like operating gas (see above)	
Purity	Medium purity from bottles or other supply equipment (recommended: 4.8 or better)	Manual purge*) to inertise the box on (renewed) commissioning, intermediate purging; pressure regulation with purge gas
Quantity	Approx. 10 - 12 m <sup>3</sup> each m <sup>3</sup> box volume	
<b>Accessories</b>		
Pressure reducing valve		Pressure regulation for purge gas with manual purge
Pressure	200 bar (20 MPa) primary, 5.5-6.0 bar (0.55 – 0.6 MPa) secondary	
Flow	250 l/min	
Connection	Ø 9 mm hose connection or Ø 10 mm cut ring screwed connection	
Supply line for purge gas:		Line from the purge gas source to the inert gas box (purge gas IN)
Connection	Ø 9 mm fabric-reinforced hose, 3 mm wall thickness, length depending on requirements	
Disposal line for purge gas exhaust:		Connection Purge gas OFF with the user's supply equipment (pressureless)
Connection	Extension with Ø 42 mm corrugated hose, length 100 mm and 2 hose clamps possible.	Connect hose for the purge gas exhaust directly to the disposal equipment

**Gases and accessories****4.6.4 Regeneration gas****!** Gas type regeneration RKM

**MBRAUN** recommends always using the same carrier gases as for the operating gas: → see table below

Regeneration gas RKM	Type / mass	Use
Gas type	Depending on the type of working and purge gas used:  <i>Nitrogen is operating gas:</i> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▪ Nitrogen/hydrogen mixture (90-95% N<sub>2</sub> with 5-10% H<sub>2</sub>)</li></ul> <i>Argon is operating gas:</i> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▪ Argon/hydrogen mixture (90-95% Ar<sub>2</sub> with 5-10% H<sub>2</sub>)</li></ul> <i>Helium is operating gas:</i> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▪ Helium/hydrogen mixture (90-95% He with 5-10% H<sub>2</sub>)</li></ul>	Reprocessing of saturated H <sub>2</sub> O/O <sub>2</sub> purification units  <b>⚠️WARNING</b> Never use hydrogen mixture with H <sub>2</sub> percentage > 10%!
Purity	Medium purity from bottles or other supply equipment (recommended: 4,8 or better)	
Quantity	Approx. 3.5 m <sup>3</sup> per regeneration	
Regeneration gas accessories	Type / mass	Use
Pressure reducing valve		Pressure regulation of the regeneration gas
Pressure	200 bar (20 MPa) primary, 0.3-0.5 bar (30 – 50 kPa) secondary	
Flow	Flow approx. 1200 l/h (10-20 l/min)	
Connection	Ø 9 mm hose connection or Ø 10 mm cut ring screwed connection	
Supply line		Connection of the gas source with the system connection Regeneration gas IN
Material	Optional (length as required): Ø 9 mm fabric-reinforced hose, 3 mm wall thickness and adapter or Ø 10 mm stainless steel pipe	
Connection	Ø 9 mm hose connection or Ø 10 mm cut ring screwed connection	

Cont. see next page

Regeneration gas accessories	Type / mass	Use
Disposal line		Connection Regeneration gas OUT with the user's disposal equipment (pressureless)
Material	Ø 9 mm fabric-reinforced hose, 3 mm wall thickness and adapter or Ø 10 mm stainless steel pipe <i>Optional (length as required):</i>	<b>NOTE</b> See particularities exhaust of a regenerative LMF!
Connection	Ø 9 mm hose connection or Ø 10 mm cut ring screwed connection	

#### 4.6.4.1 Particularities regenerative LMF (optional)

Regeneration gas LMF	Type / mass	Use
Gas type	Only use pure inert gas – like operating gas	Reprocessing of saturated - solvent filter purification units <b>⚠ WARNING</b> Do not use a hydrogen mixture!
Accessories regeneration gas LMF		
In-house disposal equipment	<b>⚠ WARNING</b> Explosion protection required!	Safe disposal of regeneration exhaust LMF
Disposal line		Regeneration gas OUT for regeneration gas exhaust
Material	Ø 9 mm fabric-reinforced hose, 3 mm wall thickness and adapter or Ø 10 mm stainless steel pipe <i>Optional (length as required):</i>	
Connection	Ø 9 mm hose connection or Ø 10 mm cut ring screwed connection	

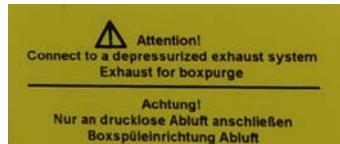
Gases and accessories

Equipment with solvent filter (LMF) + box purging:



**Solvent filter (LMF) + box purging:**

Connect connecting adapters exhaust air hose to pressureless exhaust air



## 4.7 Vacuum pumps and accessories

Vacuum pump gas purifier (VPG)	Type / mass	Use
Disposal line	Ø 25 mm fabric-reinforced hose and Ø 25 mm hose connector or Ø 25 mm stainless steel pipe with flange and clamp	Connection of the vacuum pump exhaust (oil mist and exhaust) with the user's disposal equipment (pressureless)
Material	<i>Optional (length as required):</i>	
Separate vacuum pump antechamber VP1..2	as previously	Optional, for high quality requirements of box and/or antechamber atmosphere
Separate vacuum pump VPGL		For use of solvents as process material:
Disposal line	as previously	Connection of the vacuum pump exhaust (oil mist and exhaust) with the user's disposal equipment (pressureless)
Material		

### 4.7.1.1 Particularities: purging of the pump (optional)

Vacuum pump accessories	Type / mass	Use
Purge kit	<i>Purge kit with air filter for scroll pumps</i> MB item No. 7040506	Purging the vacuum pump if contaminated / aggressive gases can travel from the antechamber into the vacuum pump

## Cooling water and accessories

### 4.8 Cooling water and accessories

#### 4.8.1 Water cooling (optional)

Not required for systems without cooling or with compressor cooling.

Cooling water:		
Use	System cooling	
Material	Mains water:  Temperature:  Flow rate:  Input pressure:  Output pressure:  Conductivity (at 25°C):  Water hardness  pH:  Particulate contamination:  Microbiological contamination (algae, bacteria, fungi):  Total dissolved solids:	10 °C – 15 °C (*must always be above the condensation temperature)  2 l/min at 10 °C 5 l/min at 15 °C  2.0 bar (0.2 MPa) max.  Depressurised (max 0.5 bar (50 kPa))  < 1.0 mS /cm  < 8°d (comparison value)  7 - 8  filtered, to a particle size ≤ 30 µm  < 100 cfu/ml  ≤ 150 mg / l

Connection line for cooling water	Type / mass	Use
Use		Feed and discharge of cooling water
Material	Ø 9 mm fabric-reinforced hose, 3 mm wall thickness and adapter or Ø 10 mm stainless steel pipe  <i>Optional (length as required):</i>	
Connection	Ø 9 mm hose connection or Ø 10 mm cut ring screwed connection	

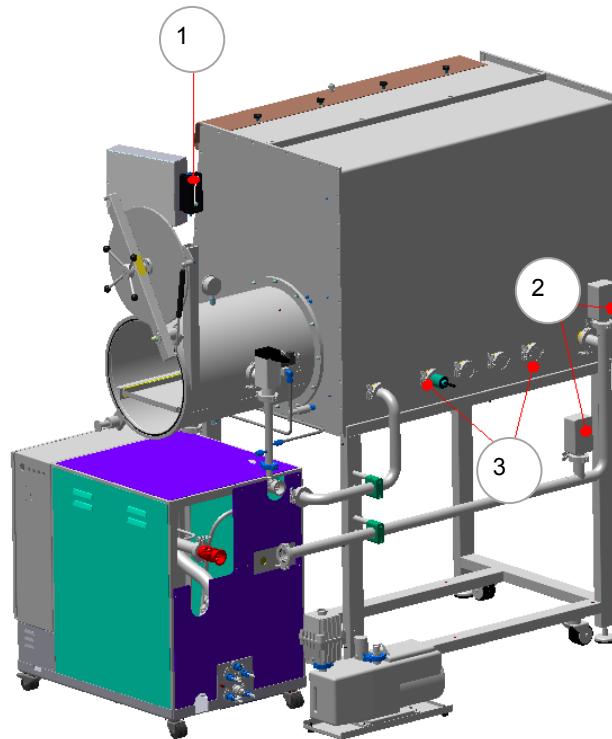
## 4.9 Connecting the system

### Prerequisites

- > The media connections are available
- > Correct connections are available
- > Use pressure reducing valves (not included in the scope of delivery of standard systems)

### 4.9.1 Workstation UNIlab Pro (Plus with different pipework) SP/DP

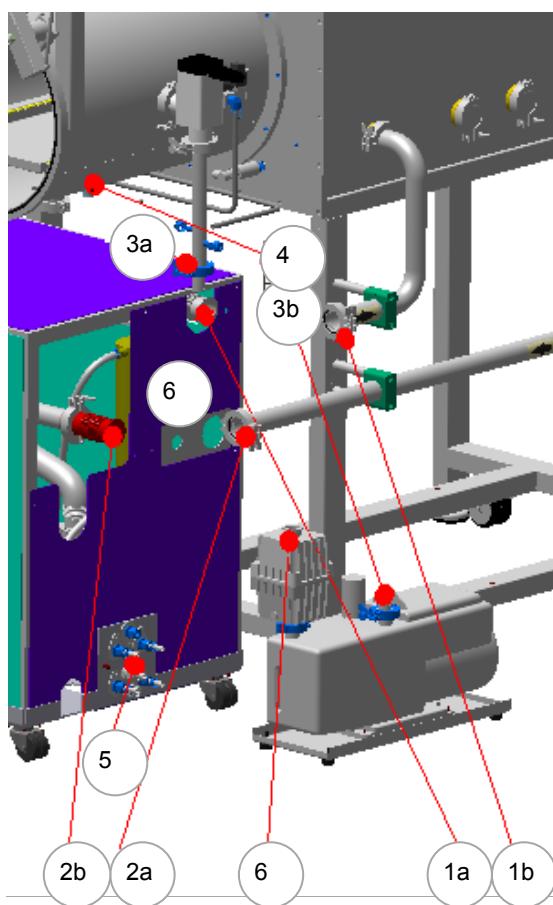
Optional: with box cooling + refrigerator + LMF (absorption principle)



#### ► Installation of accessories

- (1) Mount separately packaged operating console
- (2) Use sensors: heed the assignment of the sensors to the corresponding labels and that the measurement cells are installed in the middle of the gas line - lay cable from the GR unit in the cable ducts-connect matching colour of the cable + sensors + RJ45 connector
- (3) optional: customer-specific feedthroughs

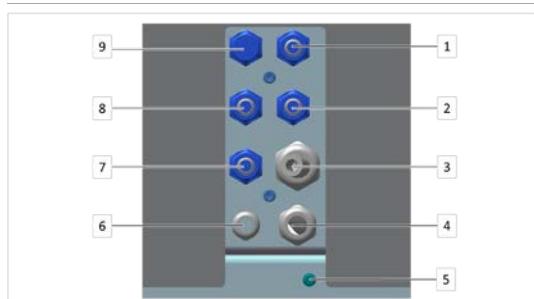
## Connecting the system



► **Connect box and gas purifier (GR):**

if necessary, connect with corrugated hoses/stainless steel pipe:

- (1) a) Output GR + b) Input box (circulation)
- (2) a) Output Box +b) Input GR (circulation)
- (3) a) Antechamber +b) Vacuum pump
- (4) Input antechamber refill (here: from GR)
- (5) Media connections (see *below for details*)
- (6) Connect exhaust vacuum pump if necessary to the in-house exhaust line



**Detail – Standard system**

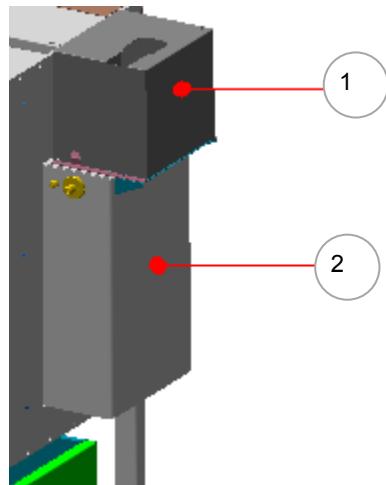
► **Connecting media**

- (1) Cooling water inlet
- (2) Cooling water outlet
- (3) Regeneration output (on exhaust air)
- (4) Main electrical connection
- (5) Earthing bolts
- (6) Mains connection vacuum pump
- (7) Regeneration gas input
- (8) Operation gas input
- (9) Vacuum connection

! Follow the marking on your system! The assignment of the connections may differ according to the customer.

**Optional: System box cooling and/or refrigerator/freezer**

The connection of the refrigerator/freezer to the compressor unit should only be made by trained personnel.



(1) Box cooling RKI (see separate manual)

(2) Refrigerator/freezer

*Not shown: power supply with coupling plug combination and temperature sensor*

## Connecting the system

### 4.9.2 Connecting the operating gas

- ▶ Connect pressure reducing valve to operating gas source (heed manufacturer's connection instructions).
- ▶ Connect supply line between gas source and system connection Operating gas IN. (the precise input pressure is specified on the system connection "Operating gas IN")
- ▶ Set pressure reducing valve to this value
- ▶ Open pressure reducing valve.

---

**!** **In standard systems:**

One connection: operating gas simultaneously takes over the function of the control gas

**In modular systems:**

Separate connections for operating gas and control gas

---

### 4.9.3 Connecting the regeneration gas

- ▶ Connect pressure reducing valve to regeneration gas source (heed manufacturer's connection instructions).
- ▶ Connect supply line between gas source and system connection **Regeneration gas IN**. (the precise input pressure is specified on the system connection "Regeneration gas IN")
- ▶ Set pressure reducing valve to this value and
- ▶ Open pressure reducing valve.

### 4.9.4 Connecting disposal line for regeneration gas



**DANGER**

Risk of personal injury and environmental damage in case of escape of used regeneration gas!

- ▶ Heed the gas supplier's information about effects that can be hazardous to health and the environment
- ▶ Discharge used regeneration gas via an exhaust disposal system which is designed for the degree of hazard of the process materials used

In case radioactive or toxic materials are used, do not discharge gas into the environment!

---

See also Chap. 3.2 Proper use

- ▶ Establish disposal line between system connection Regeneration gas OUT and disposal equipment.  
→ Connection is pressureless

#### 4.9.5 Disposal line for vacuum pump exhaust

- ▶ Establish disposal line between exhaust output of the vacuum pump and the disposal equipment (heed vacuum pump manufacturer's operating manual)
    - The connection is pressureless
  
  - ! Depending on the location of the system and the vacuum pump, an exhaust filter can be used instead of a disposal line.
- In case of questions, please contact **MBRAUN** Service.

#### 4.9.6 Connecting the cooling water

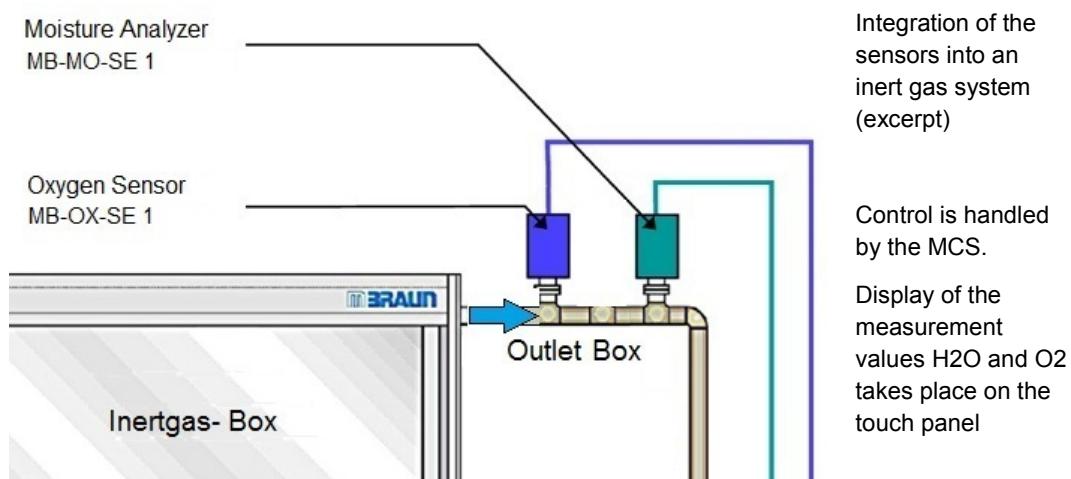
Not required for systems without cooling or with compressor cooling.

- ▶ Establish system connection Cooling water IN to cooling water source.
  - ▶ Establish system connection Cooling water OUT to disposal equipment. The connection must be pressureless (max. return pressure: 0.5 bar (50 kPa)).
  - ▶ Open cooling water (the required flow quantity depends on the water temperature)
- 
- ! Systems with additional or specially-cooled components may require a separate coolant supply.

#### 4.9.7 Installing sensors (optional)

*See also Chap. System description as well as Technical Data for measurement devices in the annex.*

The sensors are inserted in the pipework (at the box output).



## Connecting the system

### 4.9.7.1 Oxygen sensor MB-OX-SE1

#### Connection

Connect the moisture measurement device using a RJ45 connector (8-pin).

#### Installation

- !** Before applying the supply voltage, the sensor should be subjected to the inert gas for at least 1 minute.

The oxygen sensor is fastened with a vacuum-tight NW40 flange using centring ring and clamp.

- !** The sensor may only be connected to the MCS controller if the complete system has been purged sufficiently with inert gas, see chapter "Inert gas box, inertising the box".

### 4.9.7.2 Moisture measurement device MB MO-SE-1

#### Connection

- Connect the moisture measurement device using a RJ45 connector (8-pin).

#### Installation

- !** Before applying the supply voltage, the sensor should be subjected to the inert gas for at least 1 minute.

- Fasten the moisture measurement device with a vacuum-tight NW40 flange using centring ring and clamp.

- !** The sensor should only be put into operation after sufficient purging of the box:  
that is, with an O<sub>2</sub> concentration < 100 ppm.

### 4.9.8 Mains supply



#### DANGER

Risk of personal injury due to electrical voltage in case of error: uncontrolled muscle reactions, crippling, burns or death can result!

- All work on the mains connection and the electrical system may only be performed by a trained electrician.

**1. Standard systems:**

- Connect to current source: with mains plug (Schuko plug or country-specific)

**2. Special systems:**

- Connect the open mains connection line to a fused and earthed current source. Connection values: see type plate and wiring diagram (see Chap. 13)

#### 4.9.9 Potential equalisation

Due to increased leakage current (EMC filter streams), an additional potential equalization according to EN 60204-1 is required.

**Safety-Equipotential Grounding**

connect system with main grounding bus bar  
system have leakage current > 10mA  
required conductor cross-section > 10mm<sup>2</sup> Cu

**Schutz-Potentialausgleich**

Anlage mit Potential-  
ausgleichsschiene verbinden  
Ableitstrom >10mA  
Mindestquerschnitt > 10mm<sup>2</sup> Cu

M8 bolts on the rear side of the gas purifier  
(see above):

- Connect green-yellow cable with 10 mm<sup>2</sup> Cu to the local potential equalisation

Follow the instruction on the system (*below the main switch*)

*Installing additional components*

## 4.10     *Installing additional components*

Follow the descriptions in the optional additional chapters (7-10 A..X).

## 4.11     *Acceptance*

The acceptance test will be performed by **MBRAUN** service technicians if the installation and commissioning were done by **MBRAUN**.

In case of installation and initial commissioning by the customer, an acceptance test and functional inspection must be conducted before operating the system.

---

**!**    **Customer's responsibility:**

For delivery of a system that will be integrated into a customer's system or into which additional customer components will be integrated, the customer guarantees compliance with the machine directive 2006/42/EC.

---

<b>5.1</b>	<b>Introduction .....</b>	<b>5-2</b>
<b>5.2</b>	<b>Safety .....</b>	<b>5-2</b>
<b>5.3</b>	<b>Touch panel with screens and buttons .....</b>	<b>5-3</b>
5.3.1	<i>Start screen.....</i>	5-3
5.3.2	<i>Navigation .....</i>	5-5
5.3.3	<i>System components screens .....</i>	5-5
5.3.4	<i>Functions screen.....</i>	5-8
5.3.5	<i>Parameters screen.....</i>	5-9
5.3.6	<i>Warnings and error messages panel screen.....</i>	5-10
<b>5.4</b>	<b>Service .....</b>	<b>5-11</b>
5.4.1	<i>Monitoring and testing.....</i>	5-12
5.4.2	<i>System information.....</i>	5-13
<b>5.5</b>	<b>Pre-set parameters.....</b>	<b>5-16</b>
<b>5.6</b>	<b>Panel navigation overview .....</b>	<b>5-19</b>
5.6.1	<i>Navigation: Start screen.....</i>	5-19
5.6.2	<i>Navigation: Gas purifier.....</i>	5-20
5.6.3	<i>Navigation: Menu selection .....</i>	5-21
5.6.4	<i>Navigation: Antechamber.....</i>	5-22
5.6.5	<i>Navigation: Service screen.....</i>	5-23
5.6.6	<i>Navigation: Gas purifier, LMF.....</i>	5-24

## Introduction

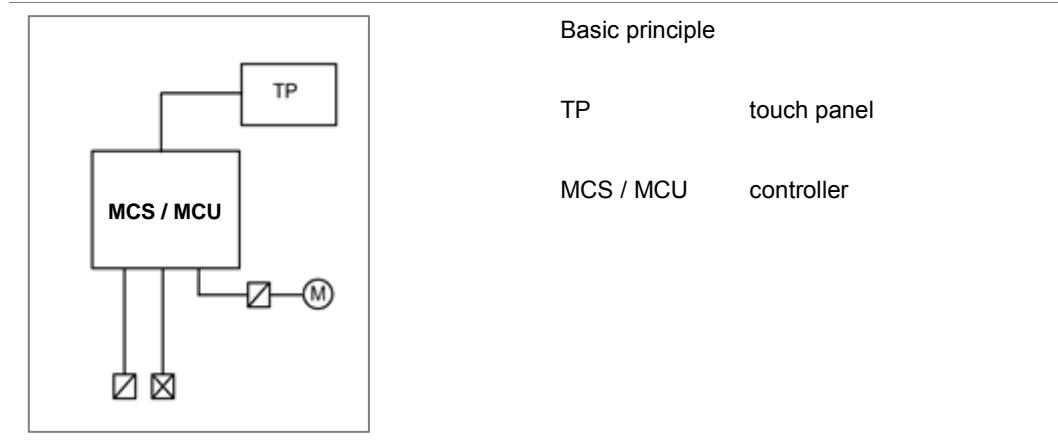
# 5 Controller

## 5.1 Introduction

This chapter will present the basic principles of the controller:

- Structure and function of the touch panel with screens
- and navigation between the individual screens of the system and of the components
- the display of process data (measurement values, status processes)

**Controller architecture:**



## 5.2 Safety

The controller of the standard systems is designed for normal operation with non-dangerous processes/process materials. Some of the parameters that are pre-set can be adapted to customer-specific conditions in the course of the minimum/maximum values (cf. *Pre-set parameters in Chap. 5.6*).

Parameterisation may only be done by qualified personnel.

If there are increased safety requirements for your applications that require controller-technical additional functions:

- ▶ Please contact **MBRAUN** Service.

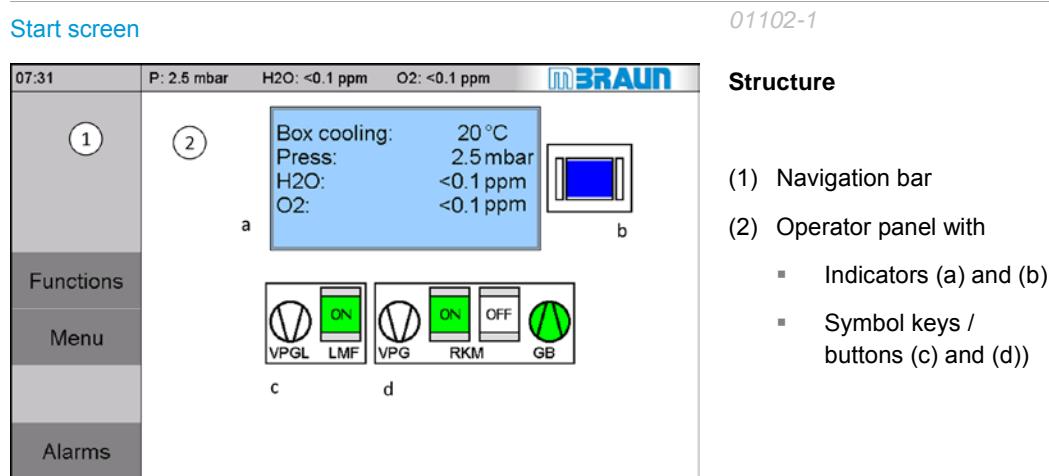
## 5.3 Touch panel with screens and buttons

By default, **MBRAUN** systems are equipped with an MCS and touch panel. The touch panel is the central operating and display unit of the system. It is in a central, easy-to-see position.

After it is switched on, the system boots up automatically. After a brief wait, the start indicator appears.

The start indicator maps the configuration of the system with the main components and serves as the operating interface. It looks different depending on how the system is equipped.

### 5.3.1 Start screen



#### Structure of start screen

##### (1) Navigation bar

- Navigation to functions and menu
- Alarms: display of alarm at issue and navigation to warning list (see 5.3.6)

##### (2) Operator panel

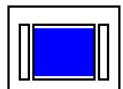
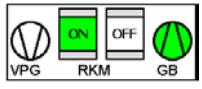
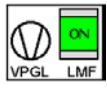
The operator panel contains status indicators and buttons with navigation functions (see following section for explanation).

In the example: gas purifier with 2 reactors (RKM) and solvent filter (LMF) and separate vacuum pump (VPGL)

## Touch panel with screens and buttons

### 5.3.1.1 Symbol keys of the system components

The system components are shown as symbols on the start screen. The symbols indicate the status of a component; sometimes they are buttons with navigation functions.

	Symbol for the box	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Display values box pressure + box atmosphere (residual content H<sub>2</sub>O and O<sub>2</sub>)</li> <li>▪ Display values temperature freezer / box (optional)</li> <li>▪ Touch the symbol key: → Calls the "Box parameters" screen</li> </ul>
	Symbol for the antechamber	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Status indicator evacuate / refill</li> <li>▪ Touch the symbol key: → Calls the "Antechamber" screen</li> </ul>
	Symbol for the reactors (removal of H <sub>2</sub> O / O <sub>2</sub> ) Ex. <i>equipped with:</i>	<p>Highlighted field: button</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Touch the symbol key: → Calls the "Gas purifier" screen</li> </ul>
	VPG: Vacuum pump	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Status indicator</li> </ul>
	RKM: Reactor Standard: 1 RKM / optional: 2 RKM	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Status indicator</li> </ul>
	Blower (GB)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Status indicator</li> </ul>
	Symbol for the solvent filter unit <i>(optional) Ex. equipped with:</i>	<p>grey field: button</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Touch the button: → calls up the "Solvent filter" screen</li> </ul>
	Vacuum pump (VPGL) <i>(optional)</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Status indicator (separate vacuum pump for the solvent filter)</li> </ul>
	Gas purifier solvent filter (LMF)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Touch the button: → call up the "Solvent filter" screen</li> </ul>

### 5.3.2 Navigation

Navigation to the various screens of the touch panel can be accomplished

- Symbol keys (see above)
- Navigation bar buttons
- Buttons on the "Menue Screen Selection" screen

#### 5.3.2.1 Navigation bar buttons

The bar with the navigation buttons is on the left side of the touch panel. These differ depending on the screen.



- (1) Touch the button: back to the previous screen
- (2) Touch the button: back to the start screen
- (3) ALARM key red: incorrect operation, system error or component failure status: see 5.3.6

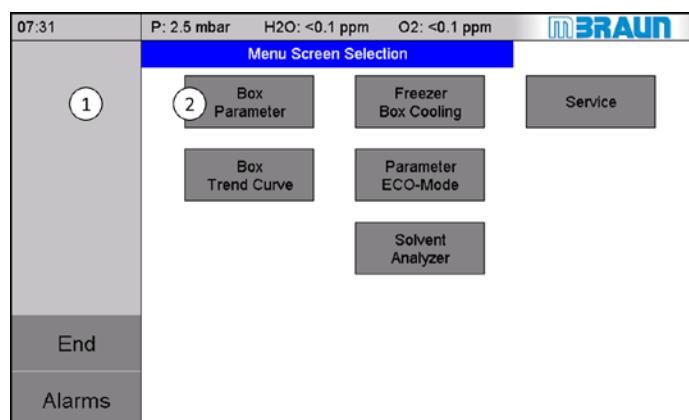
#### 5.3.2.2 Navigation using the Menue Screen Selection

With the "Screen Selection" screen type, subordinate screens are called up:

- Menue Screen Selection (example)
- Service screen selection menu (see Chap. 5.4)

Menue Screen Selection

01120



#### Structure

- (1) Navigation bar
- (2) Navigation buttons:

#### Navigation:

Touching the buttons calls up the corresponding screens.

! The buttons vary depending on how the system is equipped.

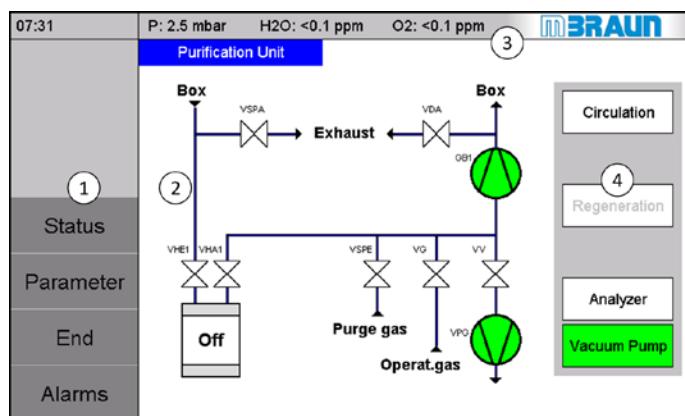
### 5.3.3 System components screens

The screens for the components of the system gas purifier and antechamber are structured according to the following principle:

## Touch panel with screens and buttons

Purification Unit screen

01310-2

**Example**

- (1) Bar with navigation buttons
- (2) Scheme of the system components
- (3) Permanent display: measurement values
- (4) Operator panel with function keys

! For more information, consult:

- the overview of the panel screens and their activation (*Chap. 5.7*).
- Details for operation of the individual system components in the respective chapters (*7, 8, 9 and 10 (optional)*)
- The system component "box" is operated via the "Menue screen selection" screen (*for details see Chap. 8*).

**Status indicators RKM / LMF**

Status indication of the symbols:

The graphic symbol keys indicate the respective function status with their colour:

**Reactors of the gas purifier (RKM):**

	OFF / WHITE	Not active
	ON / GREEN	Purification function active - in circulation operation
	REG / MAGENTA	Regeneration of the reactor

*Touch panel with screens and buttons***Status indicators: designations of valves**

GREEN

Valve open



WHITE

Valve closed



RED

Failure of the valve / error



YELLOW

Abnormal state \*)

**Status indicators: vacuum pump / analog: blower**

GREEN

switched ON



WHITE

switched OFF



RED

Failure / error



YELLOW

Abnormal state \*)

**\*) Explanation of "non-normal state":**

YELLOW

Example "Non-normal state of blower":

Symbol in yellow: if, for example, a function is switched on but not yet active, because prerequisites have not been fulfilled:

## Touch panel with screens and buttons

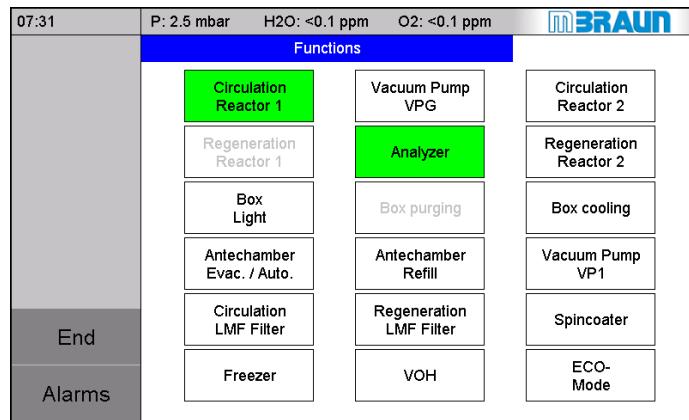
### 5.3.4 Functions screen

#### Quick operation:

The "Functions" panel screen offers direct access to the function keys without a detour to the component screens.

#### Functions screen

01160-1



#### Structure

Activate/deactivate functions by pressing a key

! With exceptions, only function buttons are depicted whose associated components are also actually present in the system.

#### Functions: Status indicators

Function keys are displayed differently depending on their status:

	White background, black type	switched OFF
	Green background, black type	switched ON
	White background, grey type *)	Function is switched OFF – switching ON is locked
	Green background, grey type	Function is switched ON – switching OFF is locked

\*) with this pattern there are also displayed buttons, whose functions are not part of this specific system.

### 5.3.5 Parameters screen

#### Parameter

Parameters are pre-configured at the manufacturer.

Some parameters for the system or system components can be adapted in a defined range. They are set on the respective screen.

The input of system parameters, alarm specifications, passwords or the selection of important options is done using input fields.

#### Display field

max: 1,1 ppm

Display of process values, not adjustable

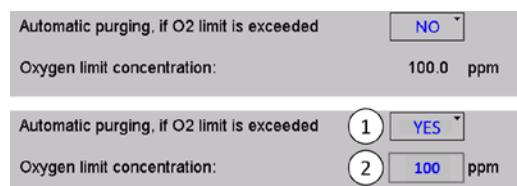
Black type:

#### Input field:

20,0 ppm

Display and change of process variables

Blue type:



#### (1) Pull-down menu

If you touch the input field on the pull-down menu:

→ The selection menu is displayed.

- ▶ Select the desired element
- Selection menu closes
- Selected value is displayed

## *Touch panel with screens and buttons*

### (2) Alphanumeric input field

If you touch the alphanumeric input field:

→ Keypad opens



- ▶ Input by touching the input keys
- ▶ Confirm with Enter key
- Keypad closes
- New input value appears in input field.

### 5.3.6 Warnings and error messages panel screen

The **Alarms** button is displayed on the navigation bar on all system and function screens. The status of the button indicates function error (system error or component failure) :

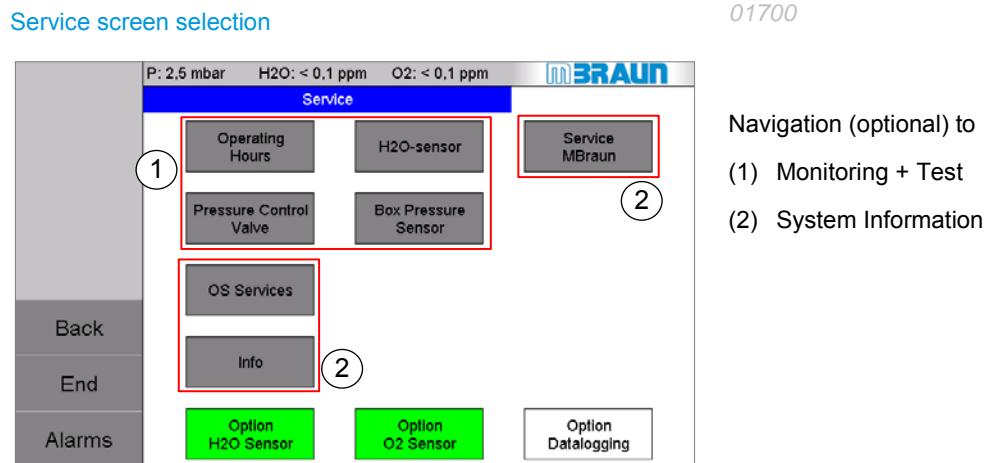
#### Status:

	Static	No message present
	Flashing	One or more messages present, one or more messages not acknowledged
	Static	One or more messages present, all messages acknowledged

See Chap. 11.1

## 5.4 Service

Using the "Service" screen, the functions for monitoring and checking of system components and system information are called up.



- (1) Monitoring + Test:- hours of operation- H2O sensor- box-pressure-sensor- pressure control valve
- (2) System information:- OS services- Info service **MBRAUN** (only accessible for **MBRAUN** Service)

## Service

### 5.4.1 Monitoring and testing

#### 5.4.1.1 Service Operating Hours (electric drives)

Using the display of the operating hours of an electrical drive, inspection and maintenance cycles can be determined and monitored.

Service: Operating Hours 01703

07:31	P: 2.5 mbar H2O: <0.1 ppm O2: <0.1 ppm	<b>Service Operating Hours</b>	<b>INBRAUN</b>
		Vacuum pump VPG	253 h
		Blower GB1	148 h
		Compressor box cooling	0 h
		Compressor freezer	0 h
		Vacuum pump VP1	0 h
Back			
End			
Alarms			

#### Electrical drives:

Display of operating hours for

- Vacuum pumps
- Blower
- Compressor box cooling
- Compressor freezer

#### 5.4.1.2 Service: H2O sensor

The regular maintenance of the sensor is monitored with the "Service Moisture Analyzer" screen. A warning is triggered after 2000 hours of operation.

Service Moisture Analyzer 01705

07:31	P: 2.5 mbar H2O: <0.1 ppm O2: <0.1 ppm	<b>Service Moisture Analyzer</b>	<b>INBRAUN</b>
		Clean sensor every 2000 operating hours! Reset operation hours only after cleaning!	
		H2O-Analyzer	74 h
			RESET
Back			
End			
Alarms			

#### Cleaning the H2O sensor:

See Chap. 12 Inspection and maintenance

After cleaning the H2O sensor:

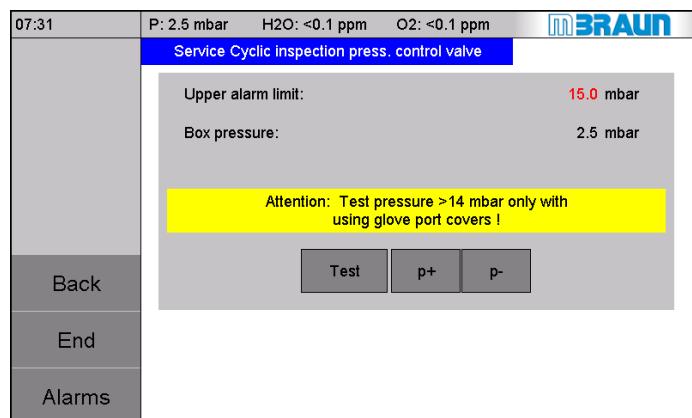
- ▶ Reset the hours of operation to zero with the **Reset** button (1)

### 5.4.1.3 Service: cyclical test pressure control valve

Optional: cyclical check of the box pressure control valve (MB-OSV)

Service: cyclical test pressure control valve

01706-1



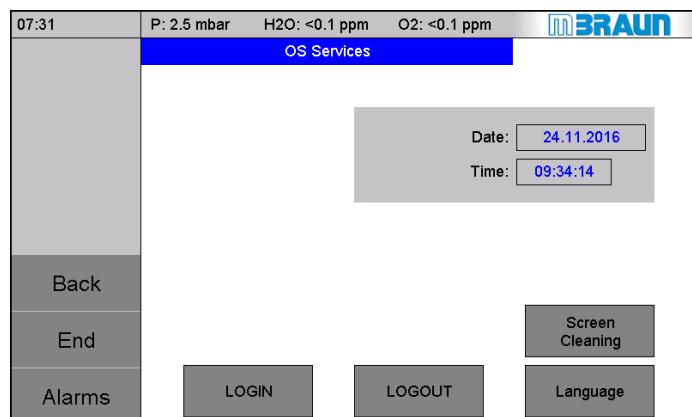
See Chap. 12 Inspection and maintenance

### 5.4.2 System information

#### 5.4.2.1 OS Services

Operation System – services (OS services)

01702



Date + Time

Date:	31.01.2013
Time:	09:34:14

Is pre-set by the manufacturer to Central European Time.

**Note:**

Please set change between summer/winter time and changes to the time zone accordingly

**Service****Settings on the touch panel****! Protection of the surface of the touch panel:**

A plastic stylus should be used for navigation and settings on the touch panel.

**Protective film:**

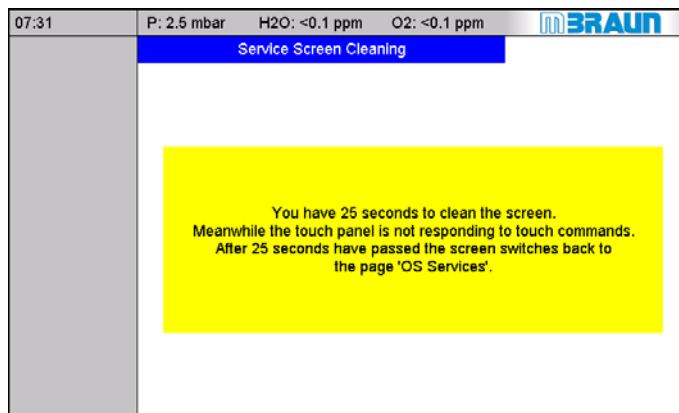
A self-adhesive protective film is optionally available for the screen. The protective film protects the touch panel against soiling and scratches. The matte surface of the protective film also reduces the reflections on the display. The protective film can be applied at any time without tools, removed or replaced.

Never use hard or sharp objects (e.g. a knife) to remove the protective film.

**1. Cleaning the screen****"OS Services" screen**

Before cleaning the screen:

- ▶ Touch **Clean screen** button



A non-sensitive display is called up for 25 seconds.

During this time the screen can be cleaned with a damp, soft cloth.

**2. Setting the language**

By default, **MBRAUN** systems have German and English user guidance.

*Other language are available on request.*

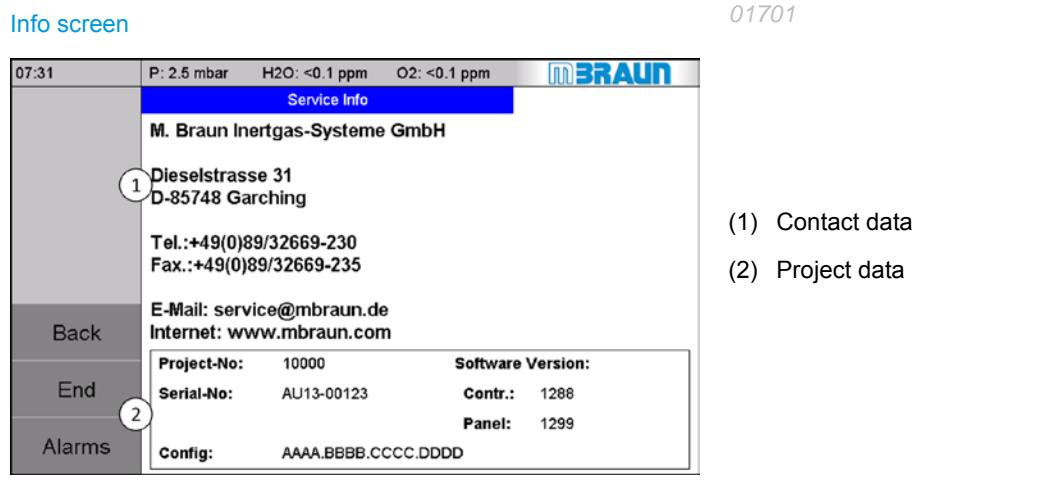
**"OS Services" screen**

Select language:

Touch **Switch language** button

#### 5.4.2.2 Info

The "Info" screen contains the **MBRAUN** contact data. In the lower field are project-specific details such as project number, if necessary serial number of the system and software version.



#### 5.4.2.3 MBraun Service

*These functions are only accessible for **MBRAUN** service technicians.*

*Pre-set parameters***5.5 Pre-set parameters**

The parameters for inert gas systems are set up at the manufacturer for a standard system (see *Setting parameters in Chap. 7-9*).

Parameter	<b>MBRAUN</b> basic systems	Manufacturer setting value	Unit	min	max.	Set value Customer	Set value Customer
General system parameter						min.	max.
• Purge box: switch off autom. after	60	min	0	999			
• Antechambers: lock inner door after	60	min	0	500			
• Normal speed circulation blower	100	%	60	100			
• H2 percentage regeneration gas	≥5	%	≥5	<5			
purge time	150	min	150	300			
ECO-Mode parameters (optional)							
• Automatic activation of ECO-Mode	No						
Time for automatic activation	17:00:00	o'clock	00:00	24:00:00			
• Speed reduction circulation blower	Yes						
Reduced speed	60	%	60	100			
Max. H2O/O2 conc. with speed reduction	10,0	ppm	2,0	10,0			
• Automatic switch-off vacuum pump. VPG / VPGL	Yes		No	Yes			
Automatic switch-off vacuum pump. VP1 / VP2	Yes		No	Yes			
Run-on time vacuum pumps	60	min	30	600			
Automatic switch-off box light	Yes						

## Pre-set parameters

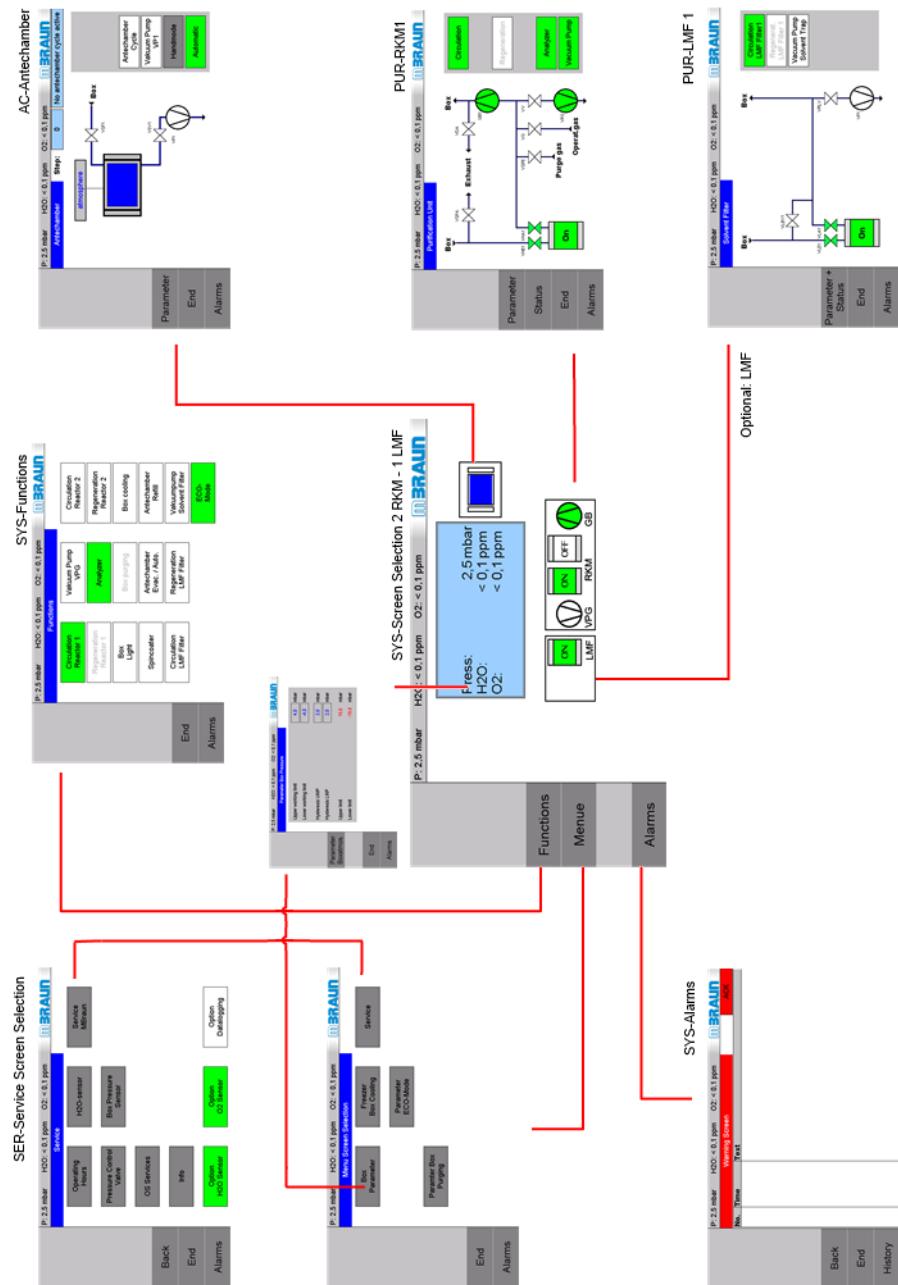
Parameter	MBRAUN basic systems	Manufacturer setting value	Unit	min	max.	Set value Customer	Set value Customer
Gas purifier RKM / LMF							
• Start circulation automatically after regeneration	No						
• Regenerate automatically	No						
Regeneration interval	25	H	24	999			
• Alarm threshold LMF analyser	1	V	0,1	9,9			
Box						min	max.
• Box pressure: upper operating limit	+4,0	mbar	-13,5	+14,5			
• Box pressure: lower operating limit	-4,0	mbar	-14,5	+13,5			
• Hysteresis OAG	2,0	mbar	0,5				
• Hysteresis OAG	2,0	mbar	0,5				
• Box pressure: upper alarm limit	+15,0	mbar	-14,0	+15,0			
• Box pressure: lower alarm limit	-15,0	mbar	-15,0	+14,0			
• H2O alarm	20,0	ppm	5,0	499,0			
• O2 alarm	20,0	ppm	5,0	999,0			
2-box system: pressure monitoring							
• Maximum pressure difference Box 1 – Box 2	1	mbar	0	5			
Freezer / box cooling							
• Target value temp. freezer	-35	°C	-40	+10			
• Temperature alarm freezer	-25	°C	-40	25			
• Target value temp. box cooling	20	°C	10	40			
• Temperature alarm box cooling	30	°C	10	50			

*Pre-set parameters*

Parameter	<b>MBRAUN</b> basic systems	Manufacturer setting value	Unit	min	max.	Set value Customer	Set value Customer
Box automatic purge							
• Automatic purge in case of O <sub>2</sub> exceeding	No						
O <sub>2</sub> limit value	100,0	ppm	10,0	999,9			
Antechambers						min.	max.
• Threshold value intermediate refill	400	mbar	50	1000			
• Threshold value vacuum leak test	5x10-1	mbar	1x10-2	10			
• Threshold value final vacuum	5x10-1	mbar	1x10-2	10			
• Number of pump refill cycles	1		1	10			
• Maximum evacuation time	5	min	1	20			
• Maximum leakage rate	3	steps	1	10			

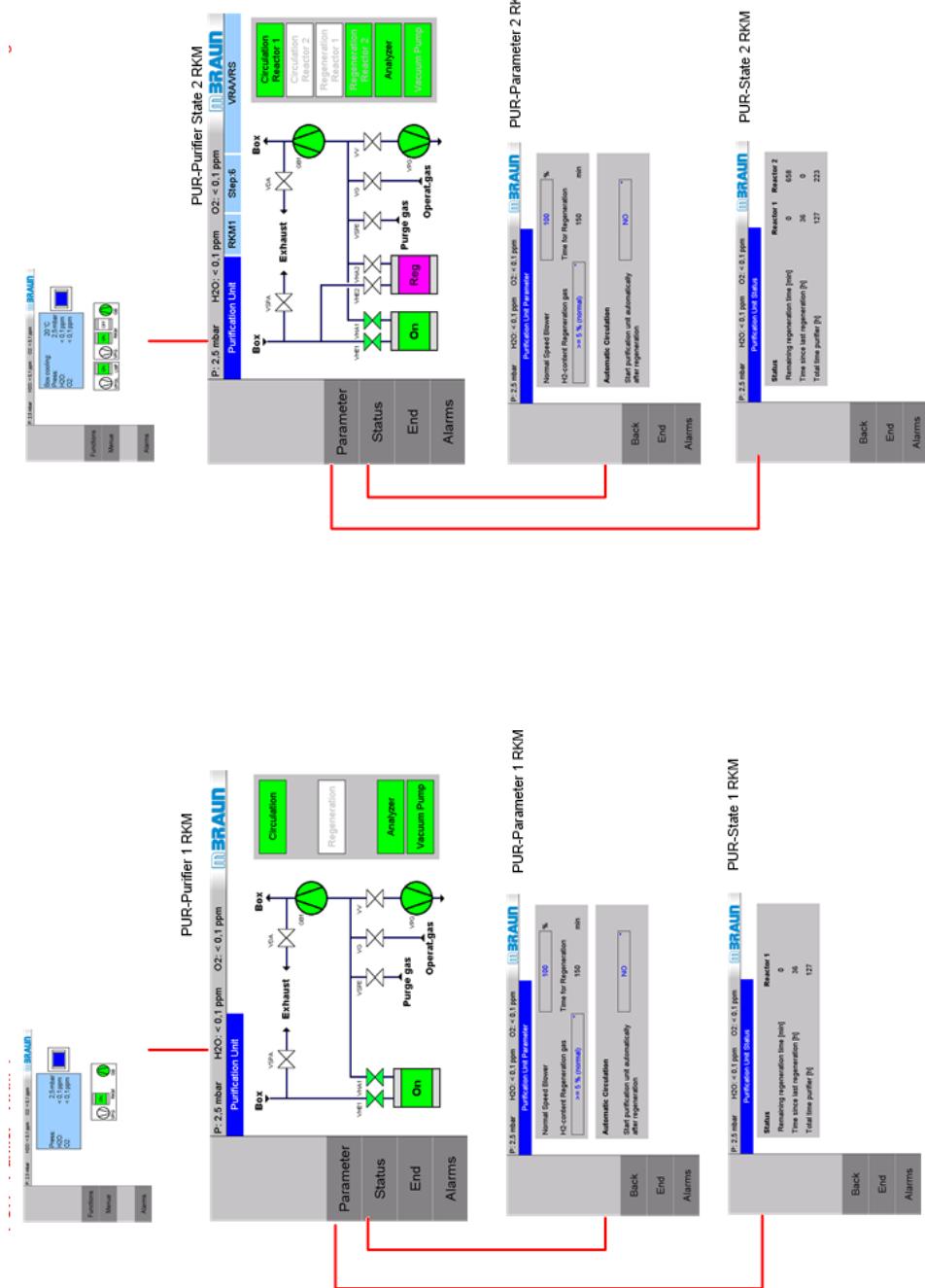
## 5.6 Panel navigation overview

### 5.6.1 Navigation: Start screen

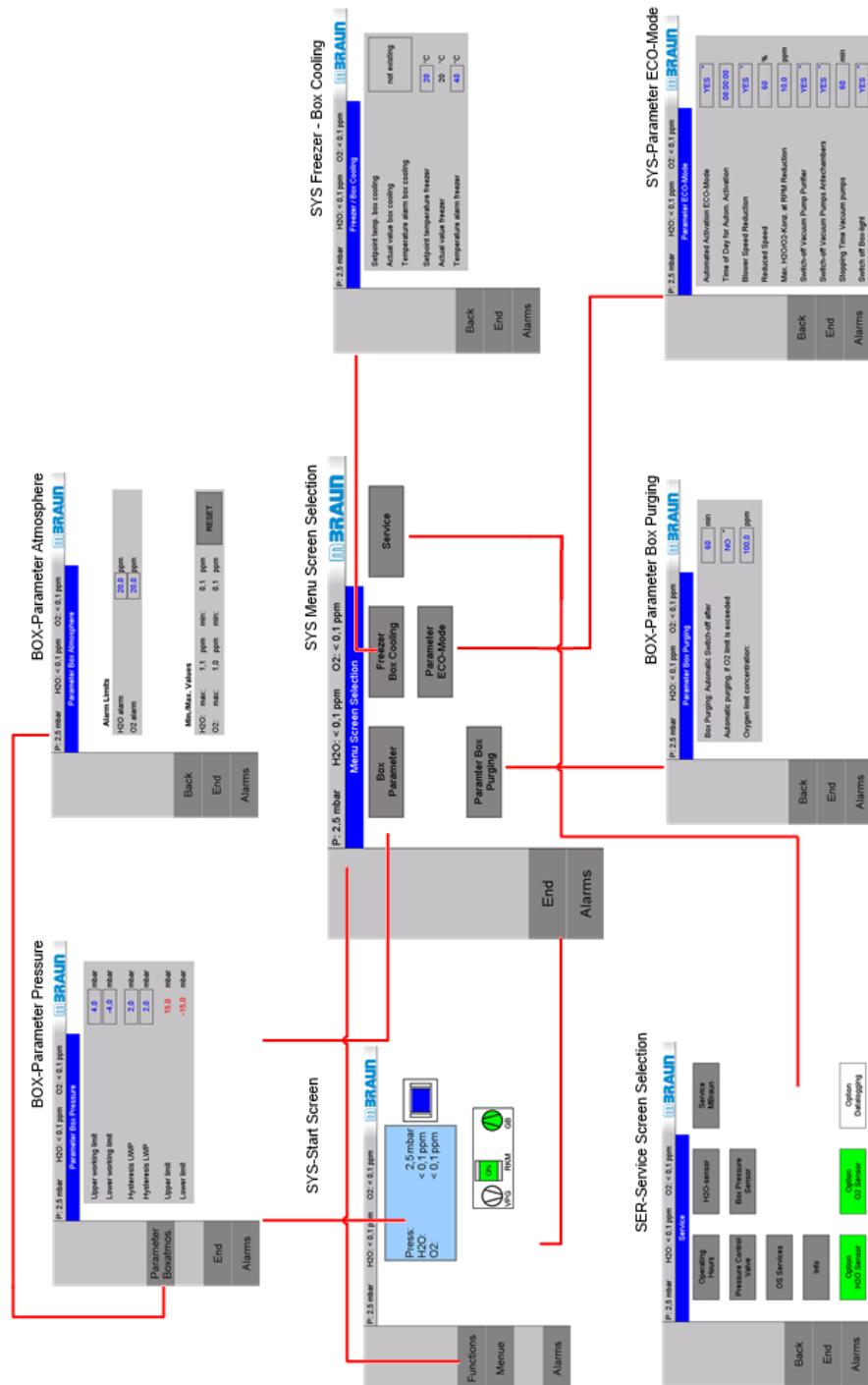


## Panel navigation overview

## 5.6.2 Navigation: Gas purifier

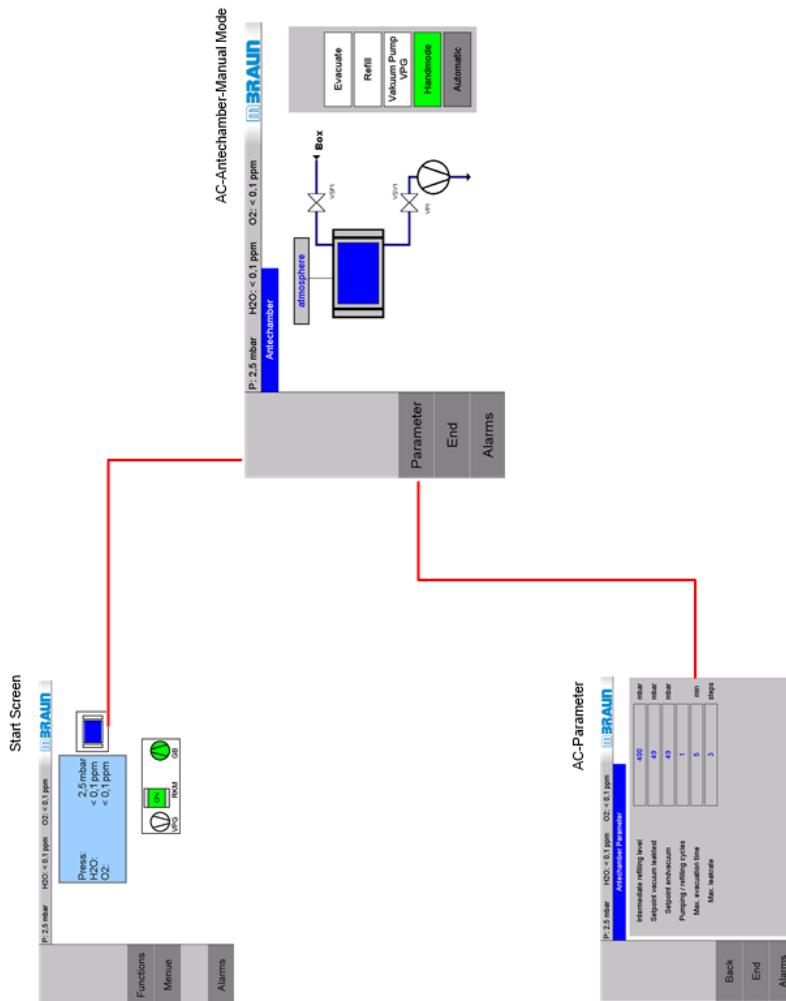


### 5.6.3 Navigation: Menu selection

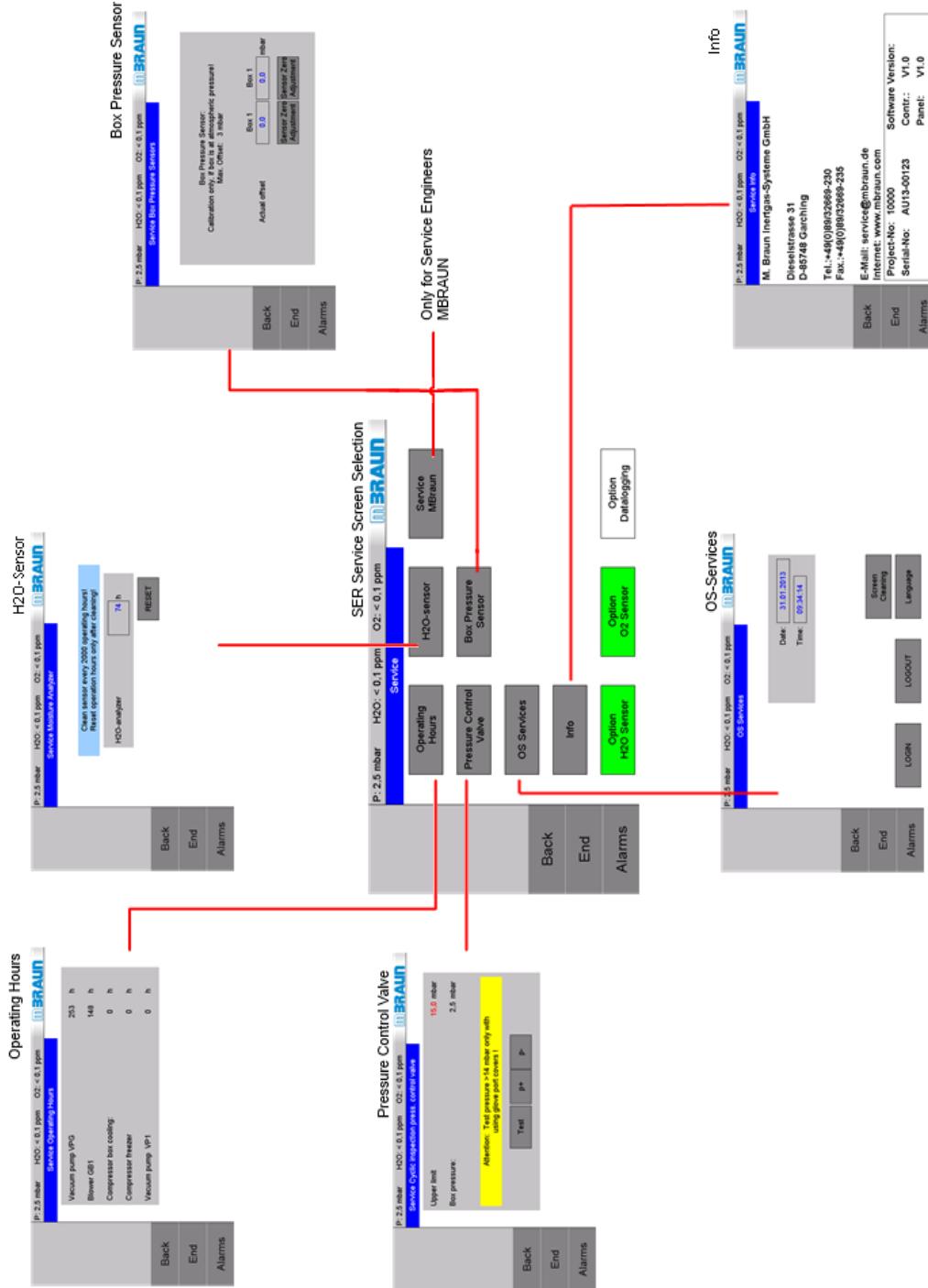


## Panel navigation overview

## 5.6.4 Navigation: Antechamber

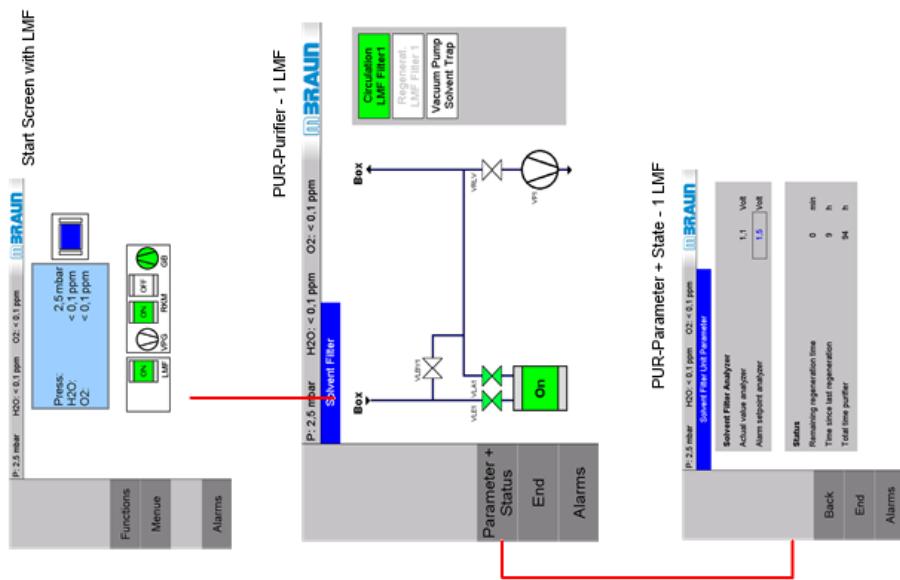


### 5.6.5 Navigation: Service screen



## Panel navigation overview

## 5.6.6 Navigation: Gas purifier, LMF



<b>6.1</b>	<b>Introduction .....</b>	<b>6-2</b>
6.1.1	<i>Overview of operating modes and activities .....</i>	6-2
<b>6.2</b>	<b>Safety .....</b>	<b>6-4</b>
6.2.1	<i>Operating Manual.....</i>	6-4
6.2.2	<i>Personnel .....</i>	6-4
6.2.3	<i>Environment.....</i>	6-5
<b>6.3</b>	<b>Prerequisites for operation .....</b>	<b>6-6</b>
6.3.1	<i>Organisational preparation.....</i>	6-6
6.3.2	<i>Check connections.....</i>	6-6
<b>6.4</b>	<b>(Initial) commissioning .....</b>	<b>6-7</b>
6.4.1	<i>Switch system on .....</i>	6-7
6.4.2	<i>Inertising the box (pre-purging) .....</i>	6-8
6.4.3	<i>Inertisation of the pipework .....</i>	6-8
<b>6.5</b>	<b>System in normal operation .....</b>	<b>6-9</b>
6.5.1	<i>Regeneration operation.....</i>	6-9
6.5.2	<i>Circulation operation .....</i>	6-10
6.5.3	<i>Antechamber cycles evacuate - refill.....</i>	6-10
<b>6.6</b>	<b>System in ECO-Mode (optional).....</b>	<b>6-10</b>
<b>6.7</b>	<b>Setting up the controller for the specific processes .....</b>	<b>6-11</b>
6.7.1	<i>Adapting parameters to process values (test run).....</i>	6-11
<b>6.8</b>	<b>Switching the system off.....</b>	<b>6-12</b>
6.8.1	<i>Prerequisites .....</i>	6-12
6.8.2	<i>Deactivating the system .....</i>	6-12
<b>6.9</b>	<b>System in maintenance operation .....</b>	<b>6-13</b>
6.9.1	<i>Maintenance.....</i>	6-13
6.9.2	<i>Repair.....</i>	6-13
<b>6.10</b>	<b>Damage to the system – behaviour in case of emergency.....</b>	<b>6-14</b>
6.10.1	<i>Damage to the system .....</i>	6-14
6.10.2	<i>Eliminating faults .....</i>	6-14
6.10.3	<i>Behaviour in case of emergency .....</i>	6-14
<b>6.11</b>	<b>De-installing the system – disposing of components .....</b>	<b>6-17</b>
6.11.1	<i>Disposal .....</i>	6-17

*Introduction*

## 6 Basic operating modes

### 6.1 Introduction

This chapter provides an overview of the operation of the system in the course of the life cycle with commissioning – operation – decommissioning – uninstalling and disposal.

The safety of a system depends on the correct use and operation of the system.

The following overview shows the operating modes, the basic activities, and names the responsibilities and authorisations.

#### 6.1.1 Overview of operating modes and activities

Operating mode	Activities	Responsible / authorised	See chap.
Commissioning	Organisational preparation	Operator of the system	4
	Check connections *)	Technician / User / <b>MBRAUN</b> Service	4
	Inertising the box(pre-purging) *)	Technician / User / <b>MBRAUN</b> Service	8.5
	Inertising the pipework / the entire system(RKM + vacuum pump + additional equipment) *)	Technician / User / <b>MBRAUN</b> Service	
Standard processes	Set up specific parameters(if necessary)	if necessary Administrator / authorised people	5
	Operation in circulation mode	Trained users	7.3.2
	Operation in regeneration mode	Trained users	7.3.2
	Antechamber processes	Trained users	9
ECO-Mode (optional)	Set up parameters	if necessary Administrator / authorised people	56 A
Service / Maintenance	For more details, see Chap. 12 Maintenance	In-house service personnel / <b>MBRAUN</b> Service	812

*Introduction*

Operating mode	Activities	Responsible / authorised	See chap.
	Cooling	Trained AC technician	10 A ff
	Electrical system	Trained electrician	
Decommissioning	Switching off the system	In-house service / Trained users	6.8
	Deactivation ( <i>short-term/long-term</i> )	In-house service / Trained users	6.8
	Disposal of components of the system	Operator of the system / Trained users	6.11

\*) With commissioned installation by the manufacturer: MBRAUN Service technician

## Safety

### 6.2 Safety

#### 6.2.1 Operating Manual



##### DANGER

Incorrect operation of the system can cause unknown risks, which can result in severe to deadly injuries

- ▶ Always keep operating manual within reach of the system
- ▶ The personnel must read and understand the operating manual
- ▶ Heed operating manual during all work: this includes preparation, transport, storage, installation, commissioning and service!
- ▶ Always heed safety instructions in this operating manual
- ▶ Heed safety instructions for third-party components (see supplier documentation).

#### 6.2.2 Personnel



##### WARNING

Personal injury and environmental damage due to incorrect operation

- ▶ The system may only be operated and maintained by suitable qualified\* and specially-trained personnel who have reached the legal minimum age.
- ▶ Temporary personnel or personnel being trained, taught or engaged in general training may only operate the system under the constant supervision of an experienced person!
- ▶ Work on electrical equipment of the system and its accessories may only be performed by a trained electrician or trained people under the direction and supervision of a trained electrician according to the electrotechnical regulations.
- ▶ Work on systems with coolants may only be performed by trained air conditioning technicians.

\* A suitably qualified person is anyone who due to his/her specialist training, as well as knowledge of the applicable stipulations, can assess the work assigned to him/her and can recognize possible hazards.

### 6.2.2.1 Responsibilities for operation of the system

---

#### **WARNING**

Endangerment of products and people with operation by several people, triggered by potential misunderstandings or uncoordinated operation.

If the deployment of several people is required:

- ▶ Define responsibilities clearly (see Chap. 5, *Password concept*)
  - ▶ Attune steps precisely to one another
  - ▶ If necessary, follow the process-specific standard operating manual
- 

### 6.2.2.2 Protective equipment / additional equipment

---

#### **WARNING**

Personal injury in case of missing (additional) protective equipment and functions

Heed all details of this operating manual relating to protective equipment and accessories.

- ▶ Wear personal protective equipment (PPE) as described for the task in question in the operating manual
  - ▶ Additional equipment and functions for personal protection must always be used with the use of processes / materials that threaten health and the environment.
- 

### 6.2.3 Environment

---

#### **WARNING**

Environmental damage in case of incorrect application / incorrect operation

Heed all details of this operating manual relating to protective equipment

- ▶ Discharge of exhaust in an in-house exhaust system
  - ▶ Proper disposal of components
  - ▶ Adhere to all applicable national regulations and provisions
- 

#### **Please note**

- Chapter 3 Safety
  - Chapter 6.11 De-installing the system – disposing of components
-

### Prerequisites for operation

## 6.3 Prerequisites for operation

### 6.3.1 Organisational preparation

#### Prerequisites:

- > The operating manual is ready
- > The personnel has read and understood the operating manual
- > The personnel is instructed and trained
- > Personal protective equipment (insofar as required) is ready

System-specific processes and materials (responsibility of the customer)

- > Processes and process materials used have been checked for their hazard potential
- > If necessary, a process-specific standard operating manual created by the customer is ready

#### 6.3.1.1 Setting up the service book

- Note beginning of operation (for determination of the regeneration cycle)
- Scheduling for calibration of the sensors, maintenance intervals

### 6.3.2 Check connections

#### Prerequisites

- > All required instructions in the foregoing chapter have been heeded
- > All supply lines and connections for **gases**, **electricity** and **cooling water** have been made properly and checked

#### Exhaust:

- > Exhaust line for used regeneration gas created properly
- > Exhaust discharge of the vacuum pump(s) assured
- > Exhaust gases that harm the environment and health are connected to an in-house exhaust system
- > With use of regenerative solvent filters: connection to an explosion-proof exhaust system is required

#### Safety equipment:



#### DANGER

Personal injury due to lacking or non-functional safety equipment!

- The normal operation of the system is only permissible with all associated, correctly-installed and functioning safety equipment!

## 6.4 (Initial) commissioning

### 6.4.1 Switch system on

#### 6.4.1.1 Activate system



The main switch is on the control cabinet of the system.

Activate system:

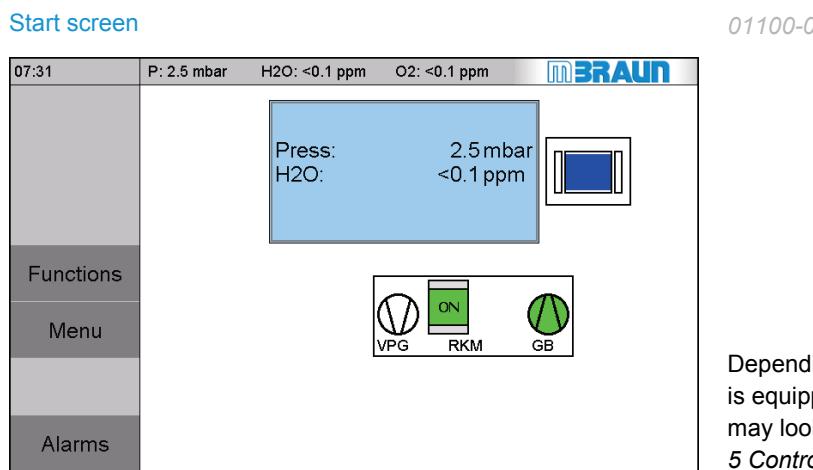
- ▶ Turn main switch to I (ON)
- After the activation, the system performs a self-test.

! All error messages that appeared before the start screen are controller errors and can only be remedied by **MBRAUN** Service.

#### 6.4.1.2 Start messages

By default, **MBRAUN** systems are equipped with a MCS-controlled touch panel. The touch panel is the central operating and display unit of the system. It is in a central, easy-to-see position.

After performing the self-test, the start indicator appears:



Depending on how the system is equipped, the start screen may look different. See *Chap. 5 Controller*.

## (Initial) commissioning

## 6.4.2 Inertising the box (pre-purging)

If an inert gas box system contains ambient air – as on commissioning, in case of error or after service work – the box must be inertised before switching on circulation operation.

**NOTICE**

Ambient air (oxygen and moisture content) damages gas purifier reactors!

- Never switch a box with ambient air into circulation operation!

Before switching a (regenerating) reactor into circulation operation:

- ▶ Replace ambient air with operating gas

---

! Please inform yourself initially about the measurement devices in *Chap. 8.4 Sensor monitoring*. To inertise the box, please follow the description in *Chap 8.5 Manual inertising of the box (without / with measurement devices)*.

! If the system is equipped with a pressure control valve, when the trigger pressure is exceeded, gas escapes through the pressure control valve into the laboratory or into the exhaust system.

**Before switching the reactor into circulation operation:****Inertisation method**

- ▶ Purge box with inert gas from external source until there is an O<sub>2</sub> percentage in the box atmosphere of less than 100 ppm

**After manual inertisation: adjust measurement devices**

- ▶ Activate measurement devices
- ▶ Wait until the sensors work and the desired atmosphere reigns.

## 6.4.3 Inertisation of the pipework

**Before connecting to the gas purifier / before commissioning:**

In modular systems (multi-box operation), whose pipework has a larger volume:

- ▶ Purge pipework with operating gas through purposeful switching on and off of the box.

## 6.5 System in normal operation

The system delivered by **MBRAUN** is set up for normal operation (see Chap. 5.6.1 Pre-set parameters).

Normal operation of the components of the system is described in

Chap. 7 Operation of the Gas purifier

Chap. 8 Operation of the Inertgas box

Chap. 9 Operation of the Antechamber

Chap. 10 Additional components (optional)

### 6.5.1 Regeneration operation

The RKM 1 purifying unit is regenerated by the manufacturer before delivery.

On initial commissioning, the circulation operation can run via the first reactor (RKM1).

#### **System with 2 reactors:**

Before initial commissioning by the customer:

- Regenerate the purification unit RKM2

The distances between the regeneration cycles vary according to the system, usage type and time (see Chap. 7.3.2.3). They can be determined as follows:

#### **Method for determining an appropriate interval for the regeneration:**

After initial commissioning: wait for detectable performance drop

When there is a performance drop, note the operating duration.

The operating duration less 10 hours = reference value for the intervals between the regeneration cycles

In case of recommissioning after a longer time:

- First regenerate reactor.

### System in ECO-Mode (optional)

#### 6.5.2 Circulation operation

Circulation operation can take place:

- using a regenerated reactor (RKM)
- always only using one reactor.

**!** The activation of the circulation is only allowed if the box is inertised and the oxygen content of the box atmosphere is < 100ppm – see *Chap. 7.3.2.1*.

While the inert gas box is in operation and the measurement devices are switched on, the concentration of water vapour, oxygen and box pressure is monitored and continuously displayed on the touch panel (see *Chap. 5*):

#### 6.5.3 Antechamber cycles evacuate - refill

Materials that are required for a process are brought into the inert gas box via the antechamber and removed from there. During the loading, the ambient air is replaced in the antechamber step by step with operating gas (inert gas) and the box atmosphere is adapted. This requires several cycles of evacuation and refilling.

The parameters for the values of number, duration and pressure of the respective cycles can be set process-specifically.

*See Chapter 9.5.2.2: Antechamber parameters*

#### 6.6 System in ECO-Mode (optional)

ECO-Mode provides an energy-saving operating mode.

*See optional Chapter 6 A ECO-Mode*

---

*Setting up the controller for the specific processes*

## 6.7 Setting up the controller for the specific processes

### 6.7.1 Adapting parameters to process values (test run)

Depending on the customer-specific process, it may be necessary to adapt the parameters for processes. For this, test runs should be evaluated and logged (test run in circulation mode, determination of the regeneration intervals).

---

**!** The adaptation of the parameters is permitted to the extent specified in "Proper use" - see *Chap. 4.*

---

An adaptation of the limit values ensures the specific conditions for the respective processes.

#### Typical settings / operating values are

- Alarm limits for oxygen and water vapour
- Upper and lower limits for box pressure
- Maximum evacuation time for the antechamber
- Regeneration intervals

*Input parameters see Chapter 5.3.5 Parameter screen.*

**Switching the system off****6.8 Switching the system off****6.8.1 Prerequisites**

The system should only be switched off for the following reasons:

- in case of emergency
- during extended maintenance (e.g. in case of replacement of reactors, particle filters or valves)
- if the system will not be used for a longer period (4 weeks and longer)

**6.8.2 Deactivating the system**

The system may only be switched off if all running processes are ended and deactivated, e.g. regeneration programme, circulation operation and antechamber processes.



The main switch is on the control cabinet of the system.

**Deactivating the system:**

- ▶ Turn main switch to **O (OFF)**.

**!** If the gas purifier is switched off for a longer period of time, the concentration of oxygen and water vapour inside the inert gas box increases continuously.

## 6.9 System in maintenance operation

### 6.9.1 Maintenance

Chapter 12 describes the maintenance cycles and work for an inert gas system. It is specified there who is authorised for which work.



#### DANGER

Risk of suffocation when performing work on an open inert gas box!

Before opening a box

- ▶ Always replace inert gas atmosphere with ambient air
- ▶ Do not place head in an antechamber if it is not ensured that the antechamber is filled with ambient air (O<sub>2</sub> content > 19.5%).

- ▶ An electrical inspection must be performed after all maintenance/decommissioning.

See *Inspection and maintenance chapter*

- ▶ All modifications must be documented by the customer and if necessary agree upon with **MBRAUN**.

#### Recommendation

Always keep the following spare parts on hand, for example

- Gloves
- Particle filter
- Oxygen and moisture sensors

### 6.9.2 Repair

Repair work that is not described in this manual may only be performed by **MBRAUN** Service.



#### DANGER

Personal injury due to non-authorised work on the system!

Maintenance work (repairs) may only be performed by **MBRAUN** Service.

In case of damage to the system:

- ▶ Contact **MBRAUN** Service.

*Damage to the system – behaviour in case of emergency***6.10 Damage to the system – behaviour in case of emergency****6.10.1 Damage to the system****DANGER****Personal injury due to damage to the system!**

Depending on the type and scope of the damage and the process materials used, unknown risks can arise!

If the system

- demonstrates visible damage
- is not working in the framework of the specifications
- was not stored properly
- was subjected to extreme, improper transport conditions

If one of these points is relevant, then

- Take the system out of operation!
- Secure it against unauthorised or unintentional commissioning!
- Contact **MBRAUN** Service.

All malfunctions must be reported to the internal service department or the **MBRAUN** Service Department immediately!

Malfunctions must be documented in the service book

**6.10.2 Eliminating faults**

The elimination of faults – with cancellation and power failure routines - is described in Chapter 11.

The circuit diagram describes the basic principles for searching for faults in the electrical system (Chap. 13).

**6.10.3 Behaviour in case of emergency****Prerequisites:**

Behaviour in case of fire in the room depends on the process materials used and the conditions on-site. Therefore, the operator must create an emergency plan according to the specific circumstances and regulate these in a standard flow plan (see chap. Installation). This plan must be displayed in a visible place in the operating area. The personnel must be instructed about behaviour in case of emergency and trained regularly.

- ▶ The operator of the system is obligated to familiarise himself with the flows in case of emergency.

*Damage to the system – behaviour in case of emergency***6.10.3.1 Oxygen concentration in the room air drops****WARNING**

Risk of suffocation in rooms with oxygen content < 19.5%

- Only enter room with compressed air bottle-driven breathing protection!

**Troubleshooting:**

- By responsible specially-trained person
- In case of questions, contact **MBRAUN** Service.

**Recommendation**

Use a wearable personal oxygen warning device that warns you if there is a critical lack of oxygen concentration in the ambient air.

- Ask **MBRAUN** Service.

If the oxygen content in the room air sinks below < 19.5%:

- Trigger and alarm / warn your colleagues
- Inform the operation's safety officer

**In case of gas supply faults:**

- Interrupt the gas feed: close the main input valve

**In case of faults in the exhaust air system:**

- Interrupt the gas supply
- Interrupt the circulation
- Leave the room immediately

### *Damage to the system – behaviour in case of emergency*

#### 6.10.3.2 Electrical accidents

In case of risks to people due to electrical malfunctions:

- ▶ Switch off main switch on the control cabinet!
- ▶ Inform the emergency physician
- ▶ Secure system against unauthorised or unintentional commissioning
  
- ▶ All malfunctions must be reported to the internal service department or the **MBRAUN** Service Department immediately!
- ▶ Malfunctions must be documented in the service book

#### 6.10.3.3 Escaping of process gases and materials

- ▶ Follow your standard flow plan (see Chap. 4.1 Preparation and installation).
- ▶ Perform a leak check and eliminate the error.
- ▶ In case of questions, contact **MBRAUN** Service.

#### 6.10.3.4 Fire in the room

Behaviour in case of fire in the room depends on the process materials used and the conditions on-site.

- ▶ Follow your operational standard operational plan (SOP) for the case of fire.(see Chap. 4.1 Preparation and installation).

*De-installing the system – disposing of components*

## 6.11 De-installing the system – disposing of components

### 6.11.1 Disposal



#### DANGER

Risk of personal injury! Risk of environmental pollution!

If during disposal work, you must work with hazardous materials, heed the following:

- ▶ Wear personal protective equipment (PPE):appropriate breathing protection full mask (with suitable filter), protective gloves and eye protection!
- ▶ The user is responsible for heeding national and international regulations. He must adhere to health, safety and environmental guidelines!

The following components or materials mentioned can be contaminated with toxic substances and pollute the environment if they are not disposed of properly.

None of the following components and materials mentioned may be allowed to reach the environmental atmosphere, sewer system, bodies or water or the earth:

- Dispose of gas purifying system (with reactors, vacuum pumps, blower), components of the system, and oil from the vacuum pumps according to the applicable local and national regulations.
- Box particle filterDispose of used filters according to the locally-applicable national guidelines.
- Solvent filter (active carbon) The filter material of solvent filters (active carbon) can be contaminated by process chemicals and solvents. Heed the requirements from the safety data sheets (material data sheets). Dispose of the filter material according to the locally-applicable national guidelines.
- Exhaust Discharge all exhaust gases via an appropriate exhaust gas disposal system!

It is the sole responsibility of the operator during the disposal of contaminated material to prevent any environmental pollution.

Procedure for de-commissioning: See Chap. 12

*De-installing the system – disposing of components*



<b>6 A.1 Particularities in ECO-Mode operation .....</b>	<b>2</b>
6 A.1.1 Box light .....	2
6 A.1.2 Circulation operation and blower.....	2
6 A.1.3 Regeneration operation and vacuum pump (VPG) .....	3
6 A.1.4 Antechambers and vacuum pump (VP1).....	4
<b>6 A.2 Safety .....</b>	<b>5</b>
6 A.2.1 Intended Use.....	5
6 A.2.2 Misuse.....	5
<b>6 A.3 Controller.....</b>	<b>6</b>
6 A.3.1 Controller: Navigation overview.....	6
<b>6 A.4 Parameter .....</b>	<b>7</b>
6 A.4.1 Automatic .....	7
6 A.4.2 Blower .....	8
6 A.4.3 Box pressure regulation via blower .....	9
6 A.4.4 Vacuum pump gas purifier (VPG + VPGL) .....	10
6 A.4.5 Vacuum pump antechamber (VP1+2) .....	10
6 A.4.6 Box light .....	11
<b>6 A.5 Activate/deactivate ECO-Mode.....</b>	<b>11</b>

## Particularities in ECO-Mode operation

### 6 A Eco-Mode

#### 6 A.1 Particularities in ECO-Mode operation

ECO-Mode provides an energy-saving operating mode that can be set for inactive operation overnight or on the weekend.

The ECO-Mode function can also be activated automatically at a defined point in time(e.g. daily at 5:00pm).

With activated ECO operating mode, the lowering of the box pressure with exceeding of the upper operating limit does not happen due to pumping out with the help of the vacuum pump, but rather by opening the additional valve (VDA), which is installed directly on the gas output of the blower. This regulation allows operation of the box only in over pressure. At the start the lower operating limit is set to + 2 mbar and the upper operating limit is adapted accordingly.

When ECO-Mode is deactivated, the original operating limits of the box pressure are reactivated.

As needed, the blower can work at reduced frequency, the vacuum pump and box light can be switched off automatically.

The minimum circulation should not drop below 10x the volume change of the enclosed box volume since otherwise there can be a loss of the quality of the box atmosphere.

*Note: Initially please follow the descriptions of operation in normal operation - see Chapters 5 to 9.*

##### 6 A.1.1 Box light

The box light can be switched ON and OFF manually while in ECO-Mode (→ function keys screen)

##### 6 A.1.2 Circulation operation and blower

The energy savings is achieved through a reduction of the frequency of the speed of the blower and through switching off the vacuum pump(s).

###### Pressure regulation

The pressure regulation takes place during the circulation in ECO-Mode via an additional output valve (VDA) on the blower output.

In ECO-Mode, the operating limits are adapted automatically in a range between  $\geq + 2$  mbar (lower operating limit) and  $\geq + 3$  mbar (upper operating limit) with a difference of at least 1 mbar.

As soon as ECO-Mode is deactivated, the previously-set operating limits are automatically reactivated.

###### Oxygen and moisture content

If the oxygen or moisture content in the box exceeds an adjustable limit value (*pre-set: 10 ppm*), the speed of the blower is increased to the normal speed. If the H<sub>2</sub>O and O<sub>2</sub> concentrations drop  $\leq 1$  ppm, the blower switches back to the speed of the ECO-Mode.

*Particularities in ECO-Mode operation*

### 6 A.1.3 Regeneration operation and vacuum pump (VPG)

Regeneration operation can also be performed with activated ECO-Mode: the vacuum pump (VPG) is ready for the regeneration programme.

**Case 1:**

> ECO-Mode is activated> Parameter "automatic switch-off of the vacuum pump" - "Yes" is set

When the regeneration programme starts, the vacuum pump (in step 2) is switched ON. After completing the regeneration programme (step 17), the pump is switched OFF again. Manual switching off of the vacuum pump during regeneration is not possible(see *Chap. 7.3.2.3 Basic principles of the regeneration programme*).

**Case 2:**

> Parameter "automatic switch-off of the vacuum pump" - "Yes" > ECO-Mode is switched on after the regeneration has started

When the regeneration programme is completed, the vacuum pump (in step 17) remains switched ON.

*Particularities in ECO-Mode operation*

## 6 A.1.4 Antechambers and vacuum pump (VP1)

**Prerequisite**

- > ECO-Mode is switched on and

Abschaltung Vakuump. Schleuse	JA
-------------------------------	----

**ECO-Mode parameters**

- > If one or several manually-operated antechambers are connected to the vacuum pump in question:

**Manually-operated antechambers**  
(without electrical valves or sensors)

These vacuum pumps are only switched off once when activating the ECO-Mode.

**Note:** The MCS does not receive any information about whether and when these antechambers were evacuated. Therefore, there can be no automatic switching off of the connected vacuum pump after an evacuation cycle!

- > Only automatic antechambers are present – main antechamber and mini-antechamber / - - (insofar as present):

**Automatic antechambers**

With activation of ECO-Mode:

- the vacuum pump VPG is switched OFF.

If an automatic antechamber cycle starts:

- the vacuum pump is switched ON and
- after 30 minutes switched OFF if no antechamber cycle is active.

## 6 A.2 Safety

### 6 A.2.1 Intended Use

Operation in ECO-mode allows energy-saving operation of the inert gas system in stand-by operation.

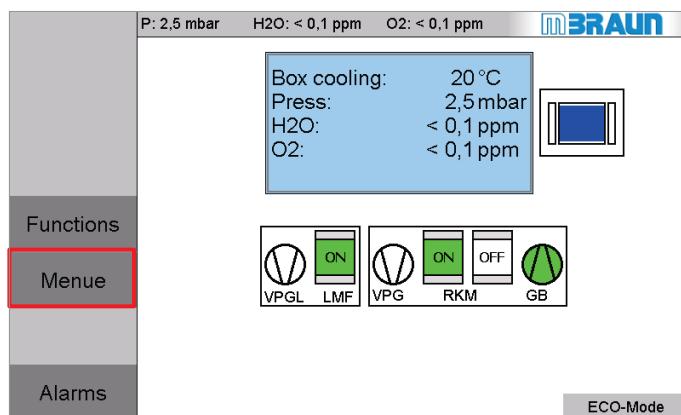
### 6 A.2.2 Misuse

If the upper operating limit of the system is set to a value < 0 mbar and the box should be kept at under pressure, the ECO-Mode may not be switched on.

**Controller****6 A.3 Controller****6 A.3.1 Controller: Navigation overview**

Start screen:

01102-0



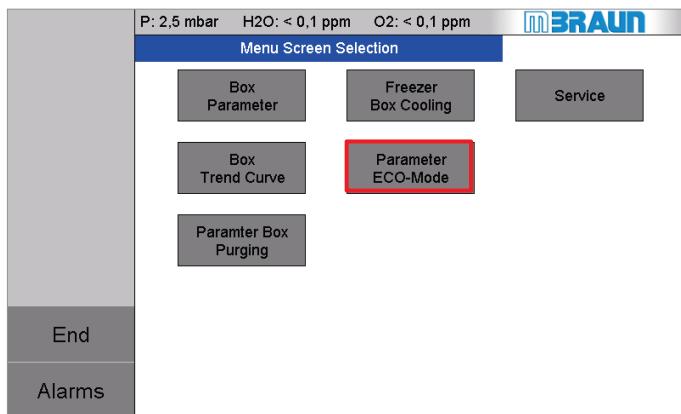
With activated ECO-Mode, there is an indicator on the start screen (bottom right)

Calling the ECO-Mode parameters screen

- Touch **Menue** button

Menue Screen Selection

01120

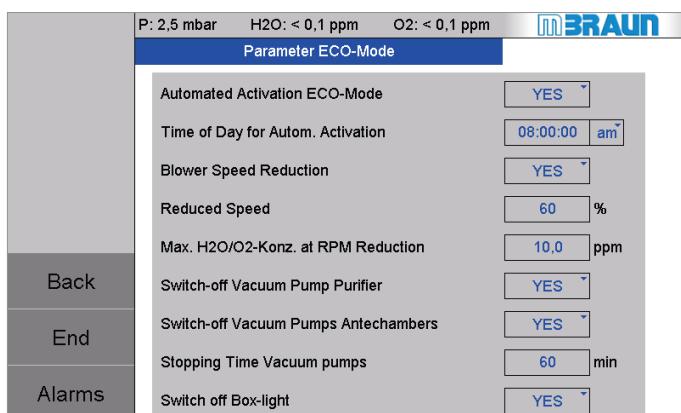


On the "Menue Screen Selection":

- Touch **Parameter ECO-Mode** button

ECO-Mode parameters

01121



See below for description

## 6 A.4 Parameter

### ECO-Mode parameters

01121

P: 2,5 mbar	H <sub>2</sub> O: < 0,1 ppm	O <sub>2</sub> : < 0,1 ppm	<b>IN-BRAUN</b>
<b>Parameter ECO-Mode</b>			
Back	Automated Activation ECO-Mode	<input type="button" value="YES"/>	
End	Time of Day for Autom. Activation	08:00:00 am	
Alarms	Blower Speed Reduction	<input type="button" value="YES"/>	
	Reduced Speed	60 %	
	Max. H <sub>2</sub> O/O <sub>2</sub> -Konz. at RPM Reduction	10,0 ppm	
	Switch-off Vacuum Pump Purifier	<input type="button" value="YES"/>	
	Switch-off Vacuum Pumps Antechambers	<input type="button" value="YES"/>	
	Stopping Time Vacuum pumps	60 min	
	Switch off Box-light	<input type="button" value="YES"/>	

The manufacturer delivers the system with the following settings:

(see Chap. 5.6 Basic parameters)

### 6 A.4.1 Automatic

Automated Activation ECO-Mode	<input type="button" value="YES"/>	
Time of Day for Autom. Activation	08:00:00	am

Automatic

With activated ECO-Mode:

#### Prerequisite

- > Automatic activation is activated (Yes)
- Enter standard time specification for automatic switching on

#### Note:

The weekdays are not taken into consideration since ECO-Mode remains activated until it is manually deactivated. Therefore the system remains in ECO-Mode on Sundays, for example.

**Parameter****6 A.4.2 Blower**

Blower Speed Reduction	<input type="button" value="YES"/>
Reduced Speed	<input type="text" value="60"/> %

**ECO-Mode parameters**

- Reduced speed

**Prerequisite**

> ECO-Mode is switched on

Reduction of the blower speed:

- Enter value of the reduced speed → Input range:  
60 .. <100 %

Blower Speed Reduction: Yes

No

Speed is reduced

Do not reduce speed

Max. H <sub>2</sub> O/O <sub>2</sub> -Konz. at RPM Reduction	<input type="text" value="10,0"/> ppm
--	---------------------------------------

**Parameter**

Increase speed to 100 %

with adjustable limit value O<sub>2</sub> and H<sub>2</sub>O content

Pre-set by **MBRAUN**:

10 ppm for O<sub>2</sub> and H<sub>2</sub>O:

*The limit values must be set so they are equally high*

**Please note:**

Limit value O<sub>2</sub> and H<sub>2</sub>O is less than < limit value for the activation of the automatic box purging!

### 6 A.4.3 Box pressure regulation via blower

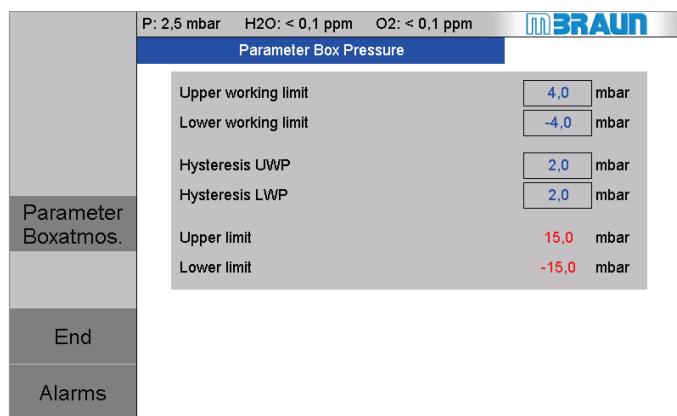
The value of the lower operating limit is limited to  $\geq +2$  mbar,

The value of the upper operating limit remains unchanged if it is set to  $\geq +3$  mbar; otherwise it is set to 3 mbar. (See 6 A.1.2).

Explanation of regulation via VDA / VPA – see also specification for ECO-Mode

Box pressure parameters

01500-2



Setting operating limits

Blower speed in normal operation and in ECO-Mode

Normal operation			ECO-Mode	
Blower type			Gas purifier without LMF	Gas purifier with LMF *)
MB-LTBL-88	Speed	100 %	60 – 100 %	80 - 100 %
	Frequency	50 Hz	30 Hz – 50 Hz	40 Hz – 50 Hz
MB-LTBL-22	Speed	100 %	50 – 100 %	80 - 100 %

\*) For work with release of gaseous contamination:

Recommendation: ECO-Mode should not be activated.

**Parameter**

**!** The blower speed of 100 % constantly ensures that gas contamination is removed from the box atmosphere as quickly as possible.

*\*) See also Chapter 7, Parameters: Blower speed in normal operation*

**6 A.4.4 Vacuum pump gas purifier (VPG + VPGL)**

Switch-off Vacuum Pump Purifier	<input type="button" value="YES"/>
---------------------------------	------------------------------------

**ECO-Mode parameters**

- Vacuum pumps
- Gas purifier

**Prerequisite**

- > ECO-Mode is switched on
- > Automatic switch-off... Yes

**VPG / VPGL (Gas purifier RKM + LMF)**

- Automatic switch-off of the VPG (and if necessary of the VPGL).

With activation of a regeneration (RKM or LMF), the required pump is switched on automatically and switched off again after completing the regeneration.

*see also 6 A.4.3*

**Note:**

The box pressure regulation is accomplished via the additional gas output valve.

**6 A.4.5 Vacuum pump antechamber (VP1+2)**

Switch-off Vacuum Pumps Antechambers	<input type="button" value="YES"/>
Stopping Time Vacuum pumps	<input type="button" value="60"/> min

**ECO-Mode parameters**

- Vacuum pump
- Antechambers

**VP1 (Separate pump antechamber)**

If the antechamber is equipped with a separate vacuum pump: the vacuum pump is switched off 60 minutes after the last evacuation of the antechamber.

Time can be set from 30..600 min.

*see also 6 A.4*

*Only manually-operated antechambers (without electrical valves or sensors):*

**Note**

The MCS does not receive any information about whether and when these antechambers are evacuated. Therefore, there can be no automatic switching off of the connected vacuum pump after an evacuation cycle!

Manually-operated antechambers

These vacuum pumps are only switched off once when activating the ECO-Mode.

*see also 6 A.4*

To execute an antechamber cycle (loading), the vacuum pump can be switched on manually on the touch panel using the function key on the function screen and then switched off again if needed.

## Activate/deactivate ECO-Mode

## 6 A.4.6 Box light

Switch off Box-light	<input type="button" value="YES"/>
----------------------	------------------------------------

ECO-Mode parameters

- Box light

**Prerequisite**

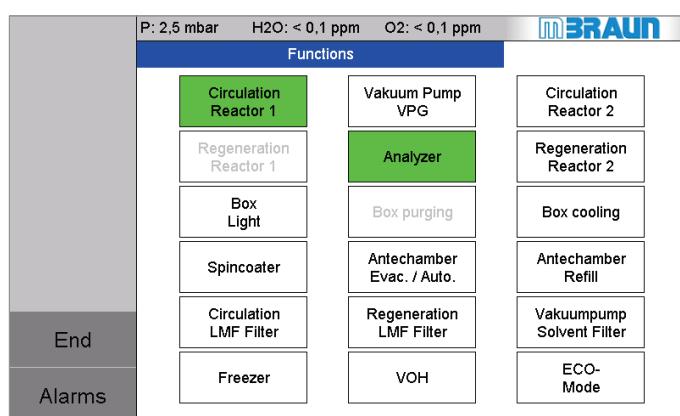
- > ECO-Mode is switched on
- > Automatic switch-off box light is activated

see also 6 A.4

## 6 A.5 Activate/deactivate ECO-Mode

Functions screen

01160-1

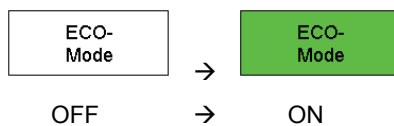


To activate/deactivate

- Touch **ECO-Mode** button

The colour changes from WHITE to GREEN

Manual activation



Automated Activation ECO-Mode	<input type="button" value="YES"/>
Time of Day for Autom. Activation	<input type="button" value="08:00:00"/> <input type="button" value="am"/>

Automatic activation of the ECO-Mode at a particular point in time:

**Prerequisite**

- > the parameter is set to "Yes"

! If ECO-Mode is activated, it remains switched on until it is switched off again manually.

This ensures that the system remains in energy-saving mode, for example on holidays/weekends.

---

*Activate/deactivate ECO-Mode*

---

<b>7.1</b>	<b>Introduction .....</b>	<b>7-2</b>
7.1.1	<i>Basic rules for the safe operation of the system.....</i>	7-2
7.1.2	<i>Use of a vacuum pump for several system components.....</i>	7-2
<b>7.2</b>	<b>Safety Gas purifier .....</b>	<b>7-3</b>
7.2.1	<i>Ambient air.....</i>	7-3
7.2.2	<i>H<sub>2</sub> mixture for regenerating H<sub>2</sub>O and O<sub>2</sub> reactors.....</i>	7-3
7.2.3	<i>Solvents – solvent filter (LMF) .....</i>	7-4
<b>7.3</b>	<b>Gas purifier (O<sub>2</sub> and H<sub>2</sub>O).....</b>	<b>7-5</b>
7.3.1	<i>Gas purifier controller RKM – Navigation overview .....</i>	7-5
7.3.2	<i>Gas purifier operation (RKM for H<sub>2</sub>O + O<sub>2</sub>) .....</i>	7-11
<b>7.4</b>	<b>Gas purifier solvent filter (LMF) .....</b>	<b>7-25</b>
7.4.1	<i>Technical Data .....</i>	7-25
7.4.2	<i>Safety .....</i>	7-25
7.4.3	<i>Manual valve controlled solvent filter LMF .....</i>	7-26
7.4.4	<i>MCS-controlled, regenerative solvent filter LMF .....</i>	7-27
7.4.5	<i>Solvent sensor (Option).....</i>	7-31

## Introduction

# 7 Gas purifier operation

## 7.1 Introduction

This chapter shows the operation of the following functions:

- Gas purifier for the removal of oxygen and moisture ( $O_2$  and  $H_2O$ )
- Solvent filter (LMF)

The operating modes "Circulation" and "Regeneration" are described.

*Functions for the gas and pressure management within the box are described in Chap. 8 Inert gas box.*

### 7.1.1 Basic rules for the safe operation of the system

- ▶ Always note that the connections/screw connections are made correctly (according to Chap. 4 Installation and Chap. 6 Commissioning and principles of operation).
- ▶ Maintain the operating flows according to this operating manual:
  - Switch on the circulation only after (manual) inertising of the box (see Chap. 8, Inert gas box).
  - The intervals for the regeneration of the reactors depend on the processes used. Determine the time at which a regeneration of your system's reactors is required.
  - Do not wait with the regeneration of the reactors until they are completely saturated.
  - After each regeneration, empty the container with the regeneration condensate
- ▶ MCS: Adhere to allowed parameter ranges The functions of the gas purifying system are defined and controlled by the parameters of the MCS.

In case of equipment with a pressure control valve in the gas purifier (optional):

- ▶ Perform the function test for the pressure control valve regularly

### 7.1.2 Use of a vacuum pump for several system components

#### Please note:

The quality of the regeneration processes is compromised with a lot of antechamber activity.

- Box pressure regulation and antechamber processes take precedence.
- During regeneration, evacuation steps of the regeneration process running in parallel will be interrupted – however the step time is not increased

**MBRAUN** recommends using an additional vacuum pump if antechamber cycles are performed very frequently and the regeneration cannot be performed during work-free time (overnight).

## 7.2 Safety Gas purifier

- ! Heed the basic safety instructions in the basic safety chapter!

### 7.2.1 Ambient air

#### **NOTICE**

Damage to the reactors due to oxygen and moisture in the ambient air! Operation in ambient air can cause overheating of the reactor material and destruction of the valves.

If the O<sub>2</sub> share in the box is greater than 100 ppm:

Before switching the reactor into circulation operation:

- ▶ Purge box with inert gas from external source until there is an O<sub>2</sub> percentage in the box atmosphere of less than 100 ppm

### 7.2.2 H<sub>2</sub> mixture for regenerating H<sub>2</sub>O and O<sub>2</sub> reactors

For the process of regenerating the reactors (RKM), a H<sub>2</sub> gas mixture of 5-10% is used. These limits must absolutely be adhered to!

#### **NOTICE**

Exceeding the hydrogen concentration >10% causes overheating of the reactor during regeneration!

- ▶ Be sure to adhere to the specified hydrogen concentration of 5-10%!
- ▶ Follow the details in the Installation chapter.

! **Exception LMF (regenerative) (optional equipment)**

No hydrogen mixture may be used for the regeneration of the solvent filter! (See below)

Gas purifier (O<sub>2</sub> and H<sub>2</sub>O)

## 7.2.3 Solvents – solvent filter (LMF)

If solvents are used as process materials in the inert gas box, it is the customer's responsibility to perform a hazard estimation/risk analysis and to specify behaviour in the handling of process material as well as in case of risk under the specific conditions on-site in a standard operating manual.

Follow the instructions in the basic safety chapter (Chap. 3).

**DANGER**

Health hazard and risk of injury due to self-ignition / explosion!

During enriching of solvents in the box / in the exhaust, if (in case of error) O<sub>2</sub> penetrates the system!

- ▶ With use of solvents in the box: always switch solvent filters and gas purifier RKM on simultaneously!
- ▶ Discharge all vacuum pump exhaust as well as used regeneration gas via the user's exhaust discharge system.

With use of a regenerative solvent filter (LMF):

- ▶ Connect the exhaust to an explosion-proof in-house exhaust system!

In case of questions, please contact **MBRAUN** Service.

**WARNING**

Saturated solvent filters cause an increase of the solvent content in the box. This causes material damage (to O-rings, copper pipes, O<sub>2</sub>-H<sub>2</sub>O reactors, etc.)

Thus the leak-tightness and functionality of the inert gas box system are no longer a given! There are consequent risks / health hazards depending on the degree of hazard of the processes/process materials used!

Always ensure that the capacity of the solvent filter is sufficient for the circulation operation:

- ▶ For LMF (absorption principle): Replace before the saturation of the filter medium
- ▶ Regenerative LMF: Regenerate the LMF at regular intervals
- ▶ If necessary, use additional solvent sensors to monitor the box atmosphere and the saturation limit.
- ▶ In case of questions, please contact **MBRAUN** Service.



1 kg active carbon absorbs approx. 100 g organic solvents. The precise quantity fluctuates depending on the solvents used and the ambient temperature.

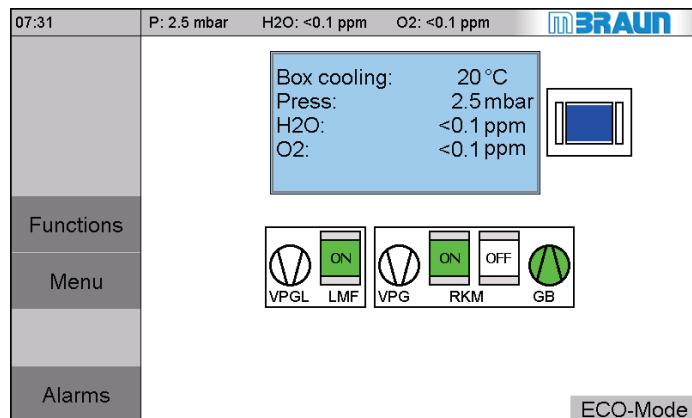
**MBRAUN** offers sensors that measure the content of the solvent in the gas after it exits the filter. This way, saturation of the solvent filter can be detected early on.

## 7.3 Gas purifier (O<sub>2</sub> and H<sub>2</sub>O)

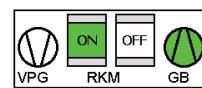
### 7.3.1 Gas purifier controller RKM – Navigation overview

Start screen:

01102-1

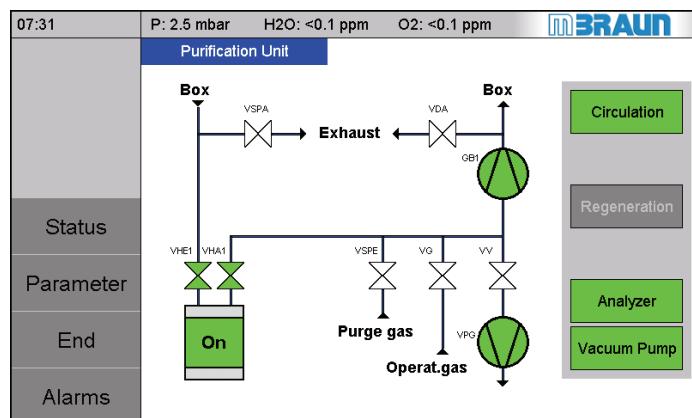


Touch the symbol key RKM  
on the start screen



Purification Unit screen 1 reactor:

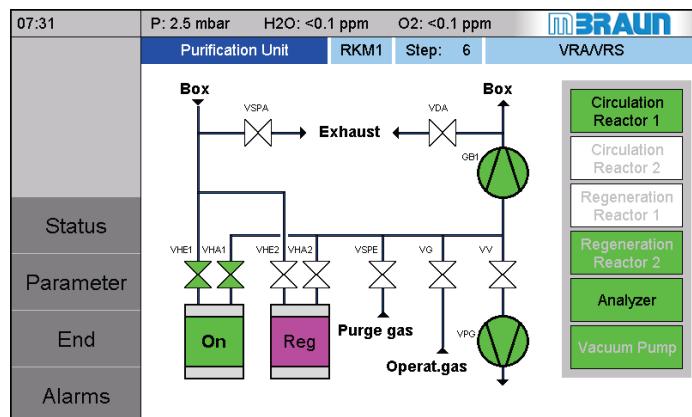
01310-2



1-reactor system

Purification Unit screen 2 reactors

01321



2-reactor system

Gas purifier (O<sub>2</sub> and H<sub>2</sub>O)

On the Purification Unit screen:

Parameter

Status

Navigate to the "Parameter" or "Status" screen

Navigation button

► Touch [Parameters](#)

or

► Touch [Status](#)

## Purification Unit Parameter screen

01300-1

07:31	P: 2.5 mbar    H <sub>2</sub> O: <0.1 ppm    O <sub>2</sub> : <0.1 ppm	<b>M</b> BRAUN
	<b>Purification Unit Parameter</b>	
	Normal Speed Blower	100 %
	H <sub>2</sub> -content Regeneration gas	Time for Regeneration
	>= 5 % (normal)	150 min
	<b>Automatic Circulation</b>	
	Start purification unit automatically after regeneration	NO
Back		
End		
Alarms		

## Purification Unit Parameter + Status screen

01311

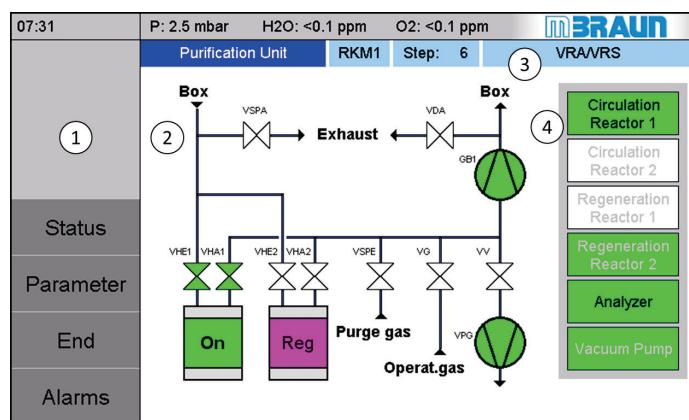
07:31	P: 2.5 mbar    H <sub>2</sub> O: <0.1 ppm    O <sub>2</sub> : <0.1 ppm	<b>M</b> BRAUN
	<b>Purification Unit Status</b>	
	<b>Status</b>	<b>Reactor 1</b>
	Remaining regeneration time [min]	0
	Time since last regeneration [h]	36
	Total time purifier [h]	127
Back		
End		
Alarms		

### 7.3.1.1 Purification Unit screen

This screen indicates the function status of the gas purifier.

Purification Unit screen:

01321



- (1) Bar with navigation buttons
- (2) Scheme of the gas purifier
- (3) Gas purifier status line
- (4) Operator panel with function keys / Display and selection (see Operation 7.5.3)

In this example of a gas purifier with 2 reactors, the circulation operation is running via reactor 1 (ON = green)

Example

While reactor 2 (REG = Magenta) is in step 6 of the regeneration.

Status button

- calls up the "Purification Unit Status" screen

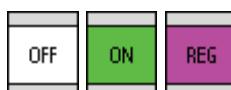
(1) Navigation

Parameter button

- calls up the "Purification Unit Parameters" screen

End button

- back to the "Start screen"



Display status indicator

(2) Schematic drawing of the gas purifier with valve status and status of the components.



Display status vacuum pump (VPG) / blower (GB)

(3) Status line regeneration

Indicates the current step of regeneration; if regeneration not active: indicator "Regeneration off" see also 7.3.4.2

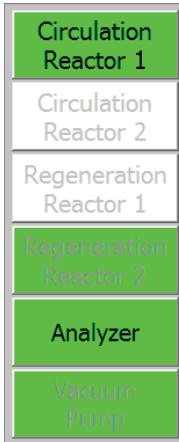
(4) next page

**Gas purifier (O<sub>2</sub> and H<sub>2</sub>O)**

(4) Operator panel with function keys:

Display and selection

On the "Purification Unit" screen it is possible to activate/deactivate functions (alternative: via the "Functions" screen – see Chap. 5.3.4)

	Switch "Circulation" function on/off; - Switch "Regeneration" function on/off; - Switch measurement devices on/off; - Switch vacuum pump on/off	see 7.5.7 see 7.5.8 see 8.4 Display of the status
---	--	--

**7.3.1.2 Purification Unit Parameters**

The screen shows the parameters for the automatic start of regeneration operation of the reactors.

Purification Unit Parameter screen

01300-1

07:31	P: 2.5 mbar    H <sub>2</sub> O: <0.1 ppm    O <sub>2</sub> : <0.1 ppm	<b>INBRAUN</b>
	<b>Purification Unit Parameter</b>	
	Normal Speed Blower	<input type="text" value="100"/> %
	H <sub>2</sub> -content Regeneration gas	Time for Regeneration
	<input type="text" value="=&gt; 5 % (normal)"/>	<input type="text" value="150"/> min
	<b>Automatic Circulation</b>	
Back	Start purification unit automatically after regeneration	<input type="text" value="NO"/>
End		
Alarms		

**Gas purification parameters**

- 1. Display % blower speed
- 2. Regeneration gas concentration that is used.
- 3. Selection of autom. circulation after regeneration

For a precise explanation of the parameters, see next page

**1. Circulation Blower Speed:**

The speed of the blower can be pre-selected for normal circulation operation in the range between 60 .. and 100 % (corresponds to 30 .. 50 Hz). Default: 100 %

**2. Variable regeneration time:**

Depending on the share of H<sub>2</sub> regeneration gas, the regeneration times can be set variably. The specification of the regeneration duration refers to the step "n" "purge with regeneration gas"

**Purging with regeneration gas**

Share of the H <sub>2</sub> share in the regeneration gas ≥ 5 % (Standard)	Duration step "n" 150 min *)
Share of the H <sub>2</sub> share in the regeneration gas < 5 %	Duration step "n" 300 min *)

\*) The numeric values for the regeneration duration are generated by the system.

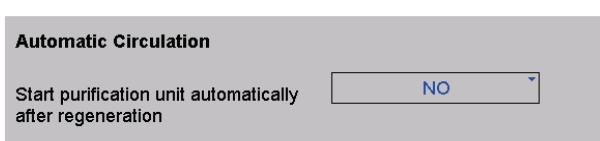
**Total duration of regeneration cycle**

with H<sub>2</sub> share in the regeneration gas ≥ 5 % Duration approx. 960 min (16 h)

with H<sub>2</sub> share in the regeneration gas ≤ 5% Duration approx. 1110 min (18.5 h)

**3. Automatic circulation/regeneration**

For systems with 1 RKM, the automatic circulation can be set: after regeneration, the circulation operation is started automatically.



Automatic circulation

(only 1-RKM system)

For system with 2-RKM, the regeneration automatic is adjustable: after a defined time - interval starts regeneration operation for a RKM unit.



Automatic Regeneration

(only 2-RKM system)

Gas purifier (O<sub>2</sub> and H<sub>2</sub>O)

## 7.3.1.3 Gas purification status

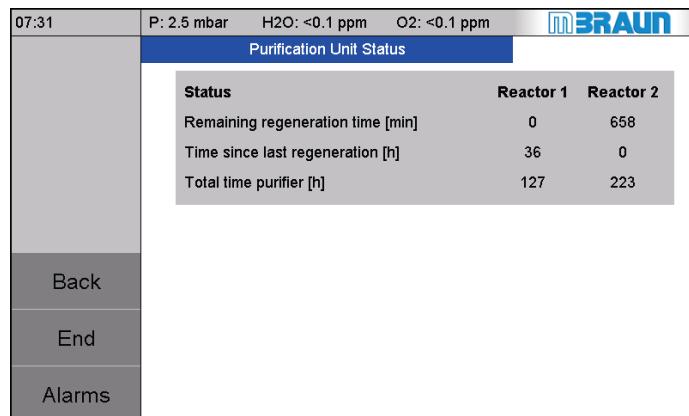
## Time status of the gas purifier

The Purification Unit Status screen indicates

- Remaining regeneration time
- Time since last regeneration
- Total hours of operation of a reactor since initial commissioning

Purification Unit Status

01322



07:31	P: 2.5 mbar	H <sub>2</sub> O: <0.1 ppm	O <sub>2</sub> : <0.1 ppm	
<b>Purification Unit Status</b>				
	<b>Status</b>	<b>Reactor 1</b>	<b>Reactor 2</b>	
	Remaining regeneration time [min]	0	658	
	Time since last regeneration [h]	36	0	
	Total time purifier [h]	127	223	
Back				
End				
Alarms				

Example:

2 RKM system

(for 1 RKM only 1 column is displayed)

The time "since last regeneration" is reset automatically after regeneration.

## Process status

Purification Unit screen

01321



Purification Unit	RKM1	Step:6	VRA/VRS
-------------------	------	--------	---------

Indicates the current step of regeneration; if regeneration not active: indicator "Regeneration off"

*The programme steps regenerate are shown in Chap. 7.3.7.*

### 7.3.2 Gas purifier operation (RKM for H<sub>2</sub>O + O<sub>2</sub>)

The two operating modes circulation and regeneration are described here.

#### Circulation operation

Gas purification through the reactors is done in the MCS-controlled operating mode "circulation operation":

- through manual activation/deactivation
- through automatic activation after regeneration of a reactor

#### Regeneration

The regeneration of the reactors is required at regular intervals. The intervals vary depending on the type and intensity of the process materials used (see below).

The flows of the circulation operation and of regeneration can

- occur one after another (1-RKM system)
- be executed in parallel (2-RKM system).

**Gas purifier (O<sub>2</sub> and H<sub>2</sub>O)****7.3.2.1 Circulation operation - activate/deactivate manually****Prerequisites:**

- > the box is pre-purged (O<sub>2</sub> content < 100 ppm)
- > regeneration operation has run completely through and
- > the "Circulation" function is released

**Functions screen**

01160-1

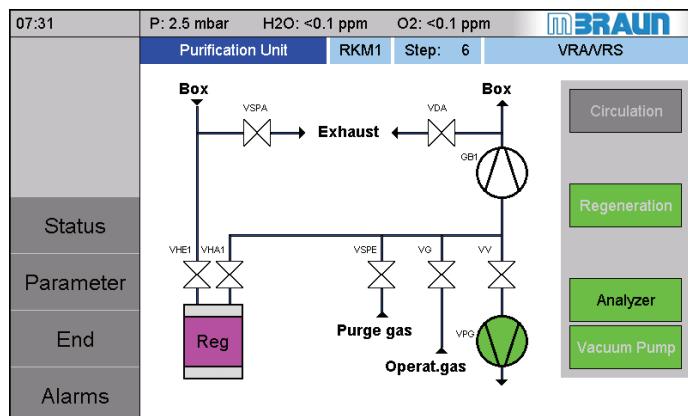
07:31	P: 2.5 mbar	H <sub>2</sub> O: <0.1 ppm	O <sub>2</sub> : <0.1 ppm	<b>INBRAUN</b>
<b>Functions</b>				
	Circulation Reactor 1	Vacuum Pump VPG	Circulation Reactor 2	
	Regeneration Reactor 1	Analyzer	Regeneration Reactor 2	
	Box Light	Box purging	Box cooling	
	Antechamber Evac. / Auto.	Antechamber Refill	Vacuum Pump VP1	
	Circulation LMF Filter	Regeneration LMF Filter	Spincoater	
	Freezer	VOH	ECO-Mode	
End				
Alarms				

**Activating circulation manually**

either on the Functions screen

**Purification Unit screen**

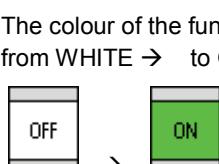
01310-2



or on the Purification Unit screen:

**Switching on the circulation function**

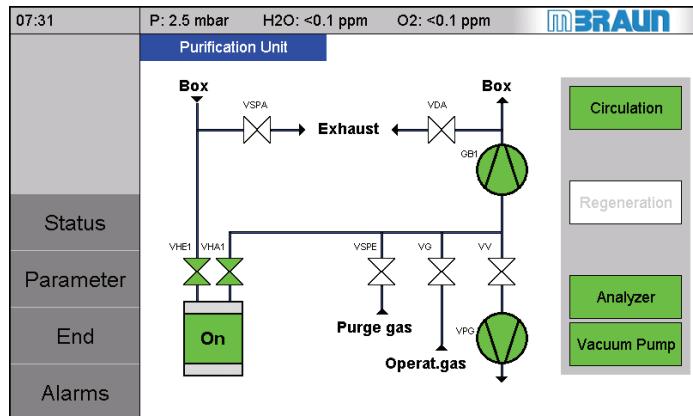
- Touch **Circulation** button



RKM symbol:

Change from OFF to ON

## Purification Unit screen (with 1 reactor):



01310-2

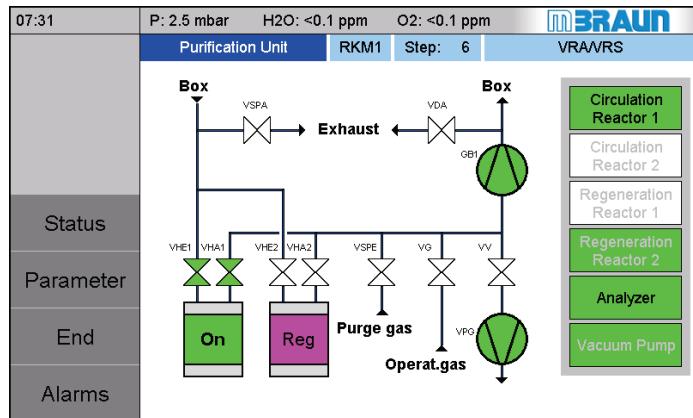
**Circulation in the 1-reactor system****Status:**

In circulation operation, the blower and the vacuum pump are switched on and the VHE and VHA valves are open:

**Functions:**

The box atmosphere circulates from the box to the reactor, is cleaned of H<sub>2</sub>O and O<sub>2</sub> and fed back into the box.

## Purification Unit screen (with 2 reactors)



01321

**Circulation in the 2-reactor system****Status reactor 1:**

Circulation operation takes place via the reactor RKM 1

- the function "Regeneration reactor 1" is blocked

**Status reactor 2 – parallel:**

Reactor 2 is regenerated.

- Valves VHE2 and VHA2 are closed. (see 7.3.5.2)

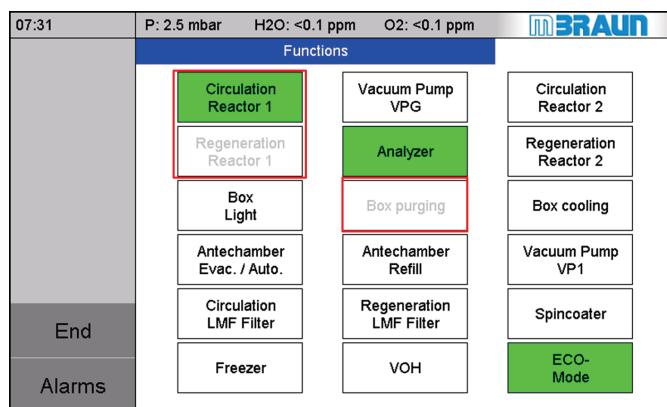
**Blocked function "Purge box"**

As long as one of the reactors is in circulation operation, the (optional) "Purge box" function is blocked.

Only if the circulation operation of both reactors is switched off is the "Purge box" function released. (cf. Chap. 8 Inert gas box).

Gas purifier (O<sub>2</sub> and H<sub>2</sub>O)

## Functions screen



01160-2

**During circulation:****Blocked functions:**

Reactor 1 is in circulation operation:

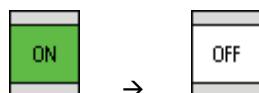
- the function "Regeneration" is blocked:
- the function "Purge box" is blocked

A release of the functions occurs after switching off the "Circulation" function.

**Switching off the "Circulation" function:**

- Touch **Circulation reactor 1** button
- "Circulation" function is switched OFF
- ⇒ Release of the functions for Reactor 1:
  - "Regeneration" - "Circulation"
  - as well as function
  - "Purge box"

The colour of the function key "Circulation reactor" changes from GREEN → to WHITE



RKM icon (*on the Purification Unit screen*): changes from ON → to OFF

The regeneration operation function is released for Reactor 1:

**Regeneration Reactor 1**

see 7.3.5.4

**Starting regeneration reactor 1:**

Touch **Regeneration reactor 1** button

Circulation operation can now be done via Reactor 2

**Circulation Reactor 2**

see above

**Starting circulation reactor 2:**

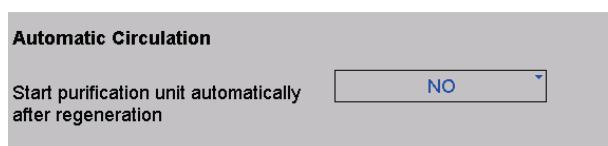
Touch **Circulation reactor 2** button *Or: Regenerate reactor*

### 7.3.2.2 Circulation operation – activate automatically

Parameters can be set for the automatic switching on of the circulation after completion of a regeneration process:

Purification Unit Parameter screen

01300-1



#### Activating automatic circulation:

- ▶ select "Yes" from the pull-down menu

#### Deactivating automatic circulation:

- ▶ select "No" from the pull-down menu

! For systems with a single reactor:

**MBRAUN** recommends switching on the automatic circulation.

### 7.3.2.3 Regeneration operation - basic principles

#### Regeneration cycle

If the cleaning capacity of the reactor charging of the gas purifier declines, the oxygen and moisture concentration in the box atmosphere increases. The reactors must be regenerated according to the process-specific experiential values: the intervals between the regeneration cycles vary depending on the system, type of usage and time.

See Chap. 6.5.2 – Commissioning – operating modes or [here](#)

! **MBRAUN** recommends regenerating the reactor at regular intervals and not waiting until a clear breakdown of the cleaning power can be detected.

! **Do not perform any antechamber cycles during regeneration**

For manually-operated antechambers, the execution of an antechamber cycles during the evacuation step of the regeneration programme should be avoided if possible.

**MBRAUN** recommends starting the regeneration of a reactor at the end of the work day and letting it run overnight.

**Gas purifier (O<sub>2</sub> and H<sub>2</sub>O)****Prerequisites:**

- > Before the start of the regeneration programme, make absolutely sure that there is sufficient regeneration gas available.

A regeneration programs needs for

Unilab: approx. 3.5 m<sup>3</sup> regeneration gas

**Flow: programme steps for regeneration**

The following table shows the individual steps of the regeneration programme, which are run through automatically after activation of the regeneration operation.

Step		Time	Valve status open*)	Action – STD
0	↓	Start 0 min		Regeneration deactivated
1			VRA/ VRS/ VRE	Test regeneration gas ON
2				Test regeneration gas OFF
3	↓		VRA/ VRS/ EH	Flow of regeneration in various steps
[4... 7]				
8	↓		VRA/ VGB/ VRV	
[9... 16]				
17	↓	Stop after e.g. 960 min		Regeneration complete

\*) Valve designations:

VGB	Blower valve
VRE	Regeneration input valve
VRA	Regeneration output valve
VRS	Regenerate valve – purge
VRV	Regenerate valve – vacuum
EH	Heating
VV	Vacuum valve

- !
- In case of a power failure, the regeneration process is interrupted and - depending on the step - repeated or continued. This can require additional quantities of regeneration gas.  
See Chap. 12 Troubleshooting.

### Conditions for regeneration in 1-reactor and 2-reactor systems

**! 1-reactor system:**

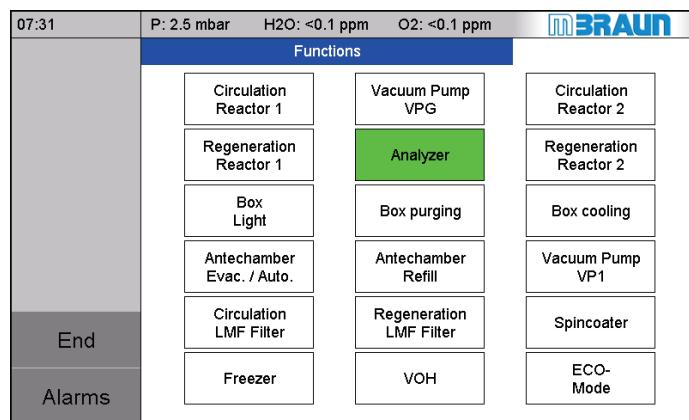
A reactor in circulation operation is blocked for the function "regeneration": After the function "Circulation" is switched OFF → Regeneration function is released

**2-reactor system:**

Only one reactor at a time can be regenerated. Circulation operation can now be done via the other reactor.

### 7.3.2.4 Activating regeneration manually

#### Functions screen



01160-4

**Activating regeneration manually:**

on the Functions screen

or Purification Unit screen:

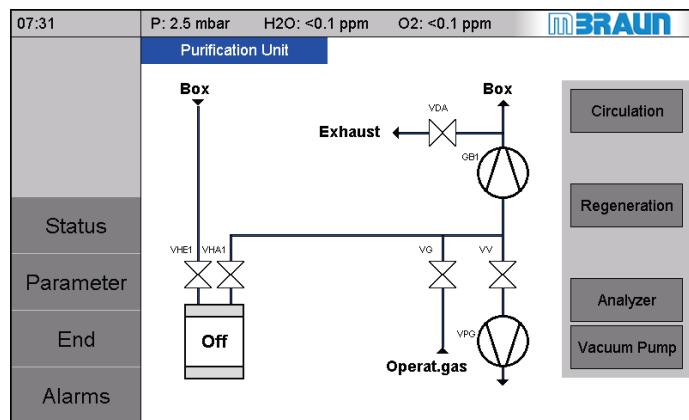
- Touch button:

Regeneration Reactor 1

or

Regeneration Reactor 2

#### Purification Unit screen



01310-1

**Example: 1-reactor system:**

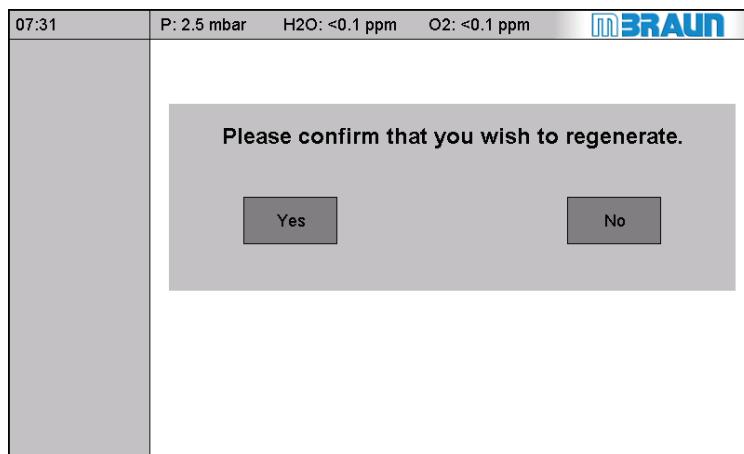
On the gas purifier screen:

- Touch button:

Regeneration

### Gas purifier (O<sub>2</sub> and H<sub>2</sub>O)

#### Query 1 Regeneration confirm from Gas purifier screen:

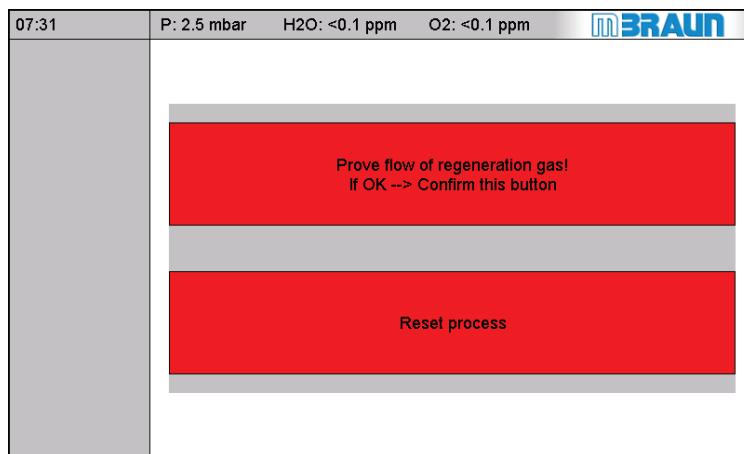


01310-3 – Query 1

- ▶ Select button: Yes confirm
- ▶ No goes back to the Gas purifier screen

#### Query 2 Flow confirm from Gas purifier screen:

- The test button for testing the regeneration gas through-flow is displayed:



01310-3 – Query 2

**First check the float in the flowmeter, then:**

- ▶ Confirm with Flow button
- Press.
- In case of button Cancel there is a query Cancel regeneration?.



Fig. Flow regulator

- ▶ Set secondary pressure on the regulator until flow-meter indicates a gas flow between 15 and 20 l/min.

- Button "Regenerate" changes colour from WHITE → to GREEN

**Testing regeneration gas flow**

- > Test: is sufficient regeneration gas present Standard gas bottle 50l: min. Pressure: 80 bar (8 MPa)

**Switching on the regeneration function**

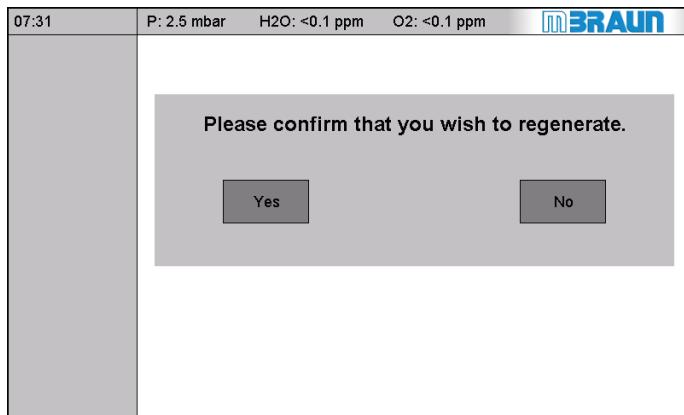


→ Change status reactor from OFF to REG

Display on the Purifier Unit screen:

#### Query 3 on the Purifier Unit screen:

01310-3 – query 3



Display: Remaining regeneration time at cancel: in min.

In case query 2 was selected with "Cancel"

"Cancel regeneration?":

- ▶ Touch test button **Yes**.

Reactor runs through an abbreviated evacuation refill cycle

Perform regeneration:

- ▶ Touch test button **No**

→ Another query flow must be answered.

The regeneration programme is continued automatically as soon as the regeneration gas flow has been confirmed. A started regeneration programme cannot be cancelled.

#### Regeneration examples: About the Purifier Unit screens – 1-reactor and 2-reactor systems

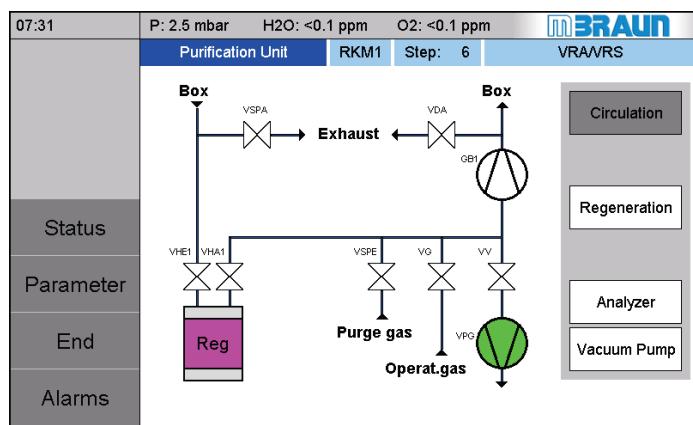
##### Regeneration display on the purifier unit screen

###### Display of process status

- The process status is displayed below the permanent line: here is Reactor 2 in programme step 6.
- The display of the time status can be called up using the "Status" navigation button (see 7.3.4.1)

**Gas purifier (O<sub>2</sub> and H<sub>2</sub>O)**

Gas purifier screen - 1 reactor



01310-4

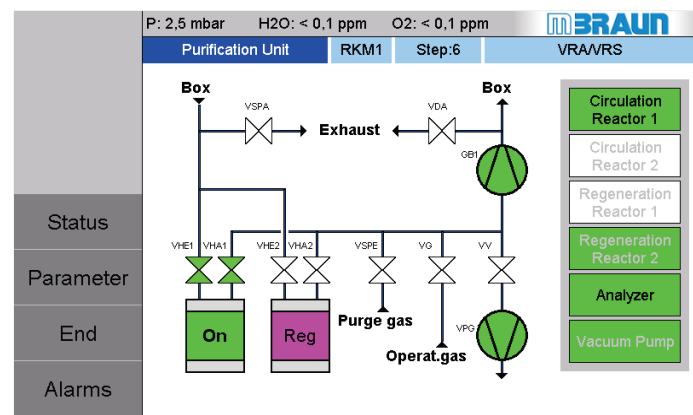
**Regeneration in the 1-reactor system****Status:**

The "Regeneration" function is active

- The "Circulation" function is blocked until the end of the regeneration programme
- The measurement devices are switched off automatically

Regeneration display on the purifier unit screen

Gas purifier screen - 2 reactors



01321

**Regeneration in the 2-reactor system****Status reactor 1:**

Circulation operation takes place via reactor 1

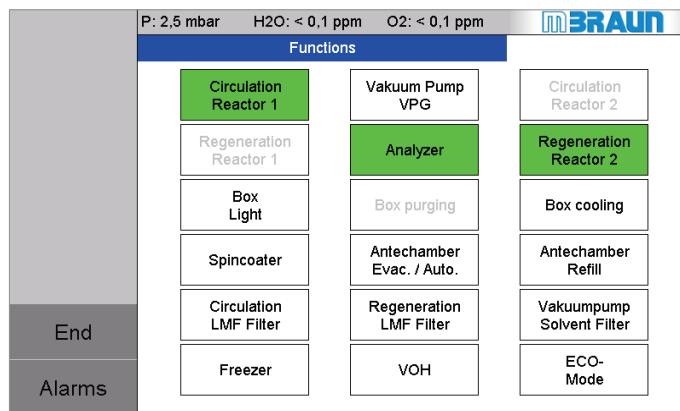
- the function "Regeneration reactor 1" is blocked

**Status reactor 2:**

- Valves VHE2 and VHA2 are closed.
- Reactor 2 is regenerated (see 7.3.5.2).

**Example of regeneration: about the Functions screen - 2-reactor system****Functions screen**

01160-3

**Button status during regeneration****Status reactor 1:**

Reactor 1 is in circulation operation:  
→ the function "Regeneration" is blocked

**Status reactor 2:**

Reactor 2 is in regeneration operation:  
→ the function "Circulation" is blocked

After completing the complete regeneration programme flow:

⇒ Release of the "Circulation" function

Gas purifier ( $O_2$  and  $H_2O$ )

## 7.3.2.5 Regeneration - activating automatically (only in 2-reactor systems)

**Prerequisite**

- > Constant stock of regeneration gas is available
- > Automatic regeneration is set (see 7.3.3 Parameters):

Purification Unit Parameter screen

01300-1

**Setting automatic regeneration**

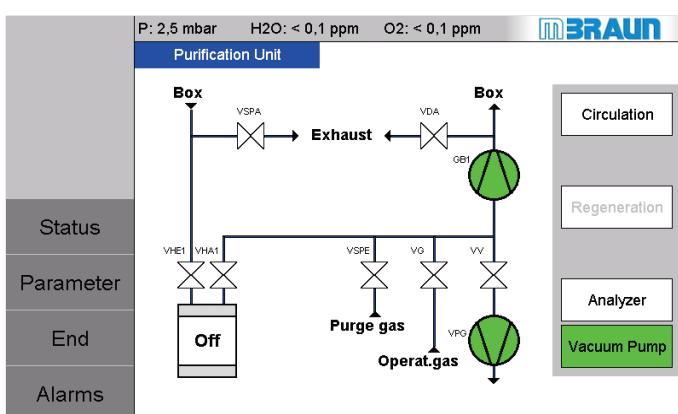
After the defined regeneration interval, the regeneration programme for a reactor starts. Circulation operation is switched automatically to the other reactor unit.

## 7.3.2.6 Ending regeneration operation – change to circulation operation

**1-reactor system:**

Purification Unit screen

01310-5

**Change to circulation operation****Status:**

- Regeneration is complete

Display after flow of the regeneration cycle:

- The "Regeneration" status line is hidden
- The colour of the "Regenerate" function key changes from GREEN (active) to WHITE (inactive)
- The colour of the symbol of the activated reactor changes from MAGENTA (active) to WHITE (inactive) OFF.
- the function "Circulation" is ready

**! With equipment with ECO-Mode:**

Please note the instructions for switching off the vacuum pump after regeneration: *Chap. 6 A. ECO-Mode*

**Activating manually:**

on the Purification Unit screen or function keys

**Umwälzen**

see 7.3.5.1

**Change to circulation operation 1-reactor system**

Activating manually:

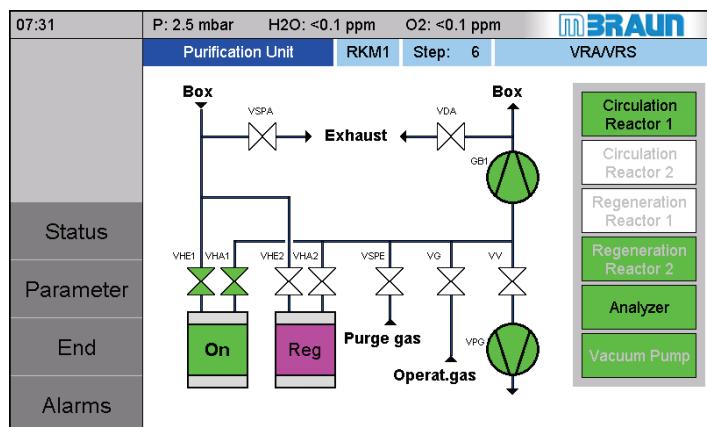
- Touch **Circulation** button

or

with activated automatic mode

**Automatic circulation**

If the automatic circulation is selected, operation changes automatically into circulation operation (see 7.3.5.2).

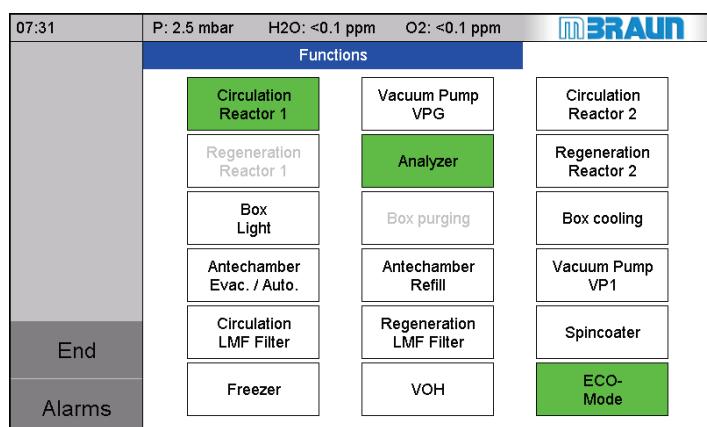
**2-reactor system****Purification Unit screen**

01321

**Change to circulation operation 2-reactor system**

2-reactor system after the regeneration

- Reactor 1 is in circulation operation:
- Reactor 2 is regenerated and is available for change to circulation operation.

**Functions screen**

01160-2

- On the start screen: call up Functions screen

here: Functions screen with 2-reactor system

Status after regeneration:

- Reactor 2: Circulation function is ready

Touch **Circulation reactor 2** button

- circulation via reactor 1 is stopped and
- circulation via reactor 2 is started

- Reactor 1 is ready for the "Regeneration" function

- 2-REACTOR system – change to circulation operation

see 7.3.5.1

### Gas purifier (O<sub>2</sub> and H<sub>2</sub>O)

#### 7.3.2.7 Regeneration function when equipped with RKM + LMF (optional)

##### With additional vacuum pump LMF (VPGL)

A simultaneous regeneration is possible if the LMF is equipped with its own vacuum pump (VPGL).

##### With common vacuum pump (RKM + LMF):

The regeneration of RKM and LMF take place one immediately after the other:

- The regeneration started first has priority and runs automatically
- After confirmation of the regeneration gas test, the last regeneration started persists in a wait step (step 2 of the regeneration programme).
- That is, it only continues to the next step with a delay of 10 hours.

#### 7.3.2.8 After the regeneration: empty condensate water bottle (optional)



##### After each regeneration:

- ▶ Empty the condensate water bottle

## 7.4 Gas purifier solvent filter (LMF)

Optional equipment internal or standing next to the gas purifier.

### 7.4.1 Technical Data

#### Manually-operated LMF - technical data:

Filling:	5 kg active carbon ( <b>MBRAUN</b> item no. 2182000)
Suitability:	for aromatic and aliphatic as well as halogenated organic solvents; gasoline, kerosene, butyric acid, acid; in other cases the suitability must be checked.
Absorption capability:	approx. 100 g solvent per kg active carbon. The precise quantity depends on the solvent type and the ambient conditions – especially on the ambient temperature.

#### Regenerative LMF - technical data:

Filling:	8 kg Mol sieve ( <b>MBRAUN</b> item no. 3240262)
Suitability:	for aromatic and aliphatic as well as halogenated organic solvents; gasoline, kerosene, butyric acid, acid; in other cases the suitability must be checked.
Absorption capability:	approx. 100 g solvent per kg mol sieve. The precise quantity depends on the solvent type and the ambient conditions -- especially on the ambient temperature.

! **MBRAUN** offers sensors that measure the content of the solvent in the gas after it exits the filter. This way, saturation of the solvent filter can be detected early on. Ask **MBRAUN** Service.

### 7.4.2 Safety

The solvent filter (LMF) precedes the reactors for H<sub>2</sub>O and O<sub>2</sub> (RKM). In case of incorrect operation, the following risk arises with a manually-operable solvent filter:



#### WARNING

With the enrichment of solvent vapours in the box atmosphere, reactors and solvent filters, there is a risk of ignition!

If the reactors and the solvent filters are not switched into circulation operation simultaneously, the solvent filter has no effect and there is an enrichment of solvent vapours in the box atmosphere!

With penetration of oxygen into the working area of the system, there is a risk of ignition!

- Always note that the solvent filter and the gas purification unit work together in circulation operation.

**Gas purifier solvent filter (LMF)****7.4.3 Manual valve controlled solvent filter LMF****Circulation operation**

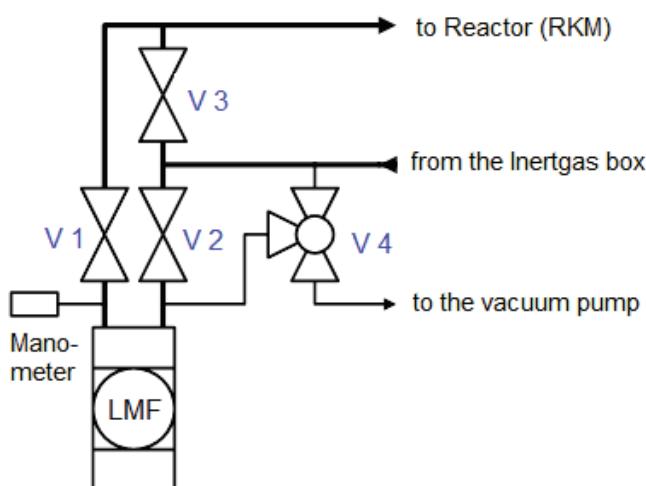
If a manually-operated solvent filter is assigned to a gas purifier ( $H_2O + O_2$  reactor RKM), it can work in parallel to the RKM reactor in circulation operation.

**Bypass operation**

In bypass operation, the manual valves are set so that the box atmosphere circulates exclusively via the RKM reactors. This operating mode can be selected if no solvents accumulate in the box or for the replacement of the active carbon (see Chapter 12 Inspection and maintenance).

**Valve scheme**

The following diagram shows the arrangement of the valves that are necessary for the operation of the solvent:



Circulation operation:	Bypass operation:
Operation: Gas purifier with solvent filter LMF	Operation: Gas purifier without solvent filter LMF
Valve 1 (V1) open Valve 2 (V2) open Valve 3 (V3) close	Valve 3 (V3) open Valve 1 (V1) close Valve 2 (V2) close
Valve 4 (V4) must be in the "closed" position.	Valve 4 (V4) must be in the "closed" position.

**Maintenance mode for exchange of the active carbon**

See valve scheme and description on the system and Chap. 12.5.9 Inspection and maintenance

#### 7.4.4 MCS-controlled, regenerative solvent filter LMF

Analogous to the 1 and 2-reactor systems for H<sub>2</sub>O and O<sub>2</sub> (RKM), there are solvent filter systems (LMF). Solvent filter systems work in parallel to the RKM cleaning units and follow the same functional principle.

- 
- ! The principle of circulation is the same for 1 and 2-filter systems. Systems with 2 solvent filters can be deployed more flexibly since one filter can be regenerated while the second filter remains active.
- 



#### WARNING

Risk of explosion / risk of fire

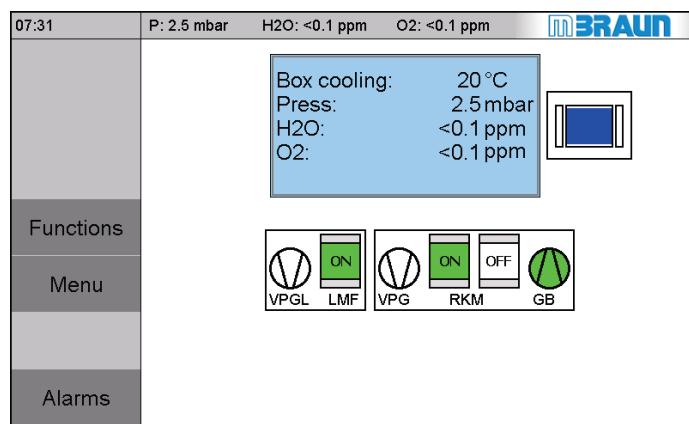
During regeneration of an LMF there could be formed combustible gas mixtures in combination with ambient air

- ▶ Connect regeneration gas outlet of the system always to an in-house disposal system which is explosion protected
  - ▶ A regeneration operation is allowed only if the regeneration outlet is connected to this in-house disposal system which has to be in service
- 

##### 7.4.4.1 Overview LMF controller via touch panel

Start screen for system: 2 RKM and LMF

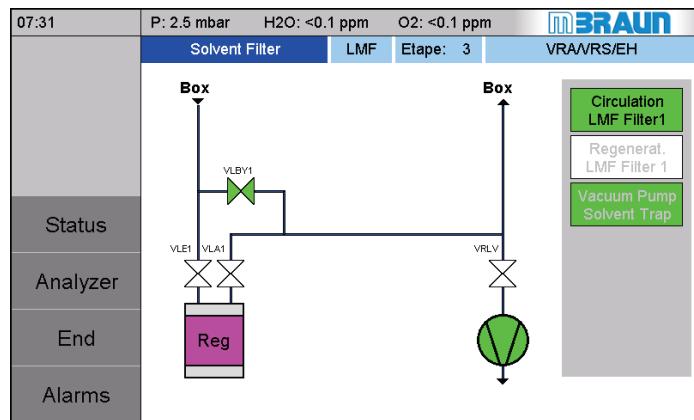
01102-1



**Navigate to the solvent filter screen**

- ▶ Touch **LMF** symbol.

Display here: separate vacuum pump for LMF (optional)

**Gas purifier solvent filter (LMF)****Solvent Filter screen**

*Display here: LMF in regeneration operation*

01402-2

**Solvent Filter screen :**

**Navigate to the Parameter or Status screen**

- ▶ Touch **Status** navigation button.

To reach the status display of the LMF.

- ▶ Touch **Analyser** navigation button in order to query the solvent concentration

**Solvent Filter Status screen**

07:31	P: 2.5 mbar H2O: <0.1 ppm O2: <0.1 ppm	<b>Purification Unit Status</b>	<b>BRAUN</b>
		<b>Status</b>	<b>Reactor 1</b> <b>Reactor 2</b>
	Remaining regeneration time [min]	0	658
	Time since last regeneration [h]	36	0
	Total time purifier [h]	127	223
Back			
End			
Alarms			

01400-2

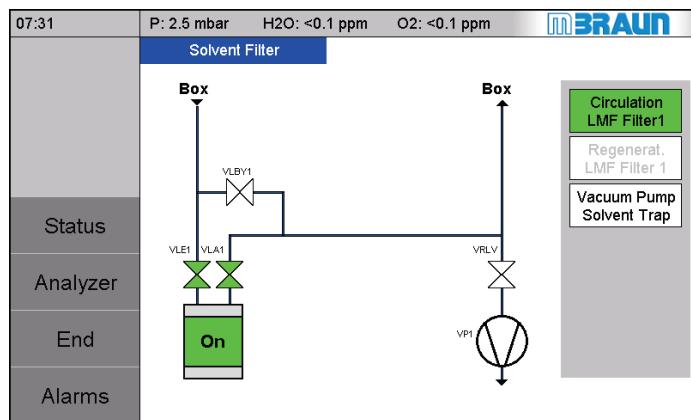
**Display on the "Status" screen:**

- Remaining regeneration time
- Time since last regeneration
- Total operating hours

#### 7.4.4.2 Activate or deactivate the regenerative LMF (circulation operation)

Solvent Filter screen

01401-2



**Activating/deactivating the LMF:**

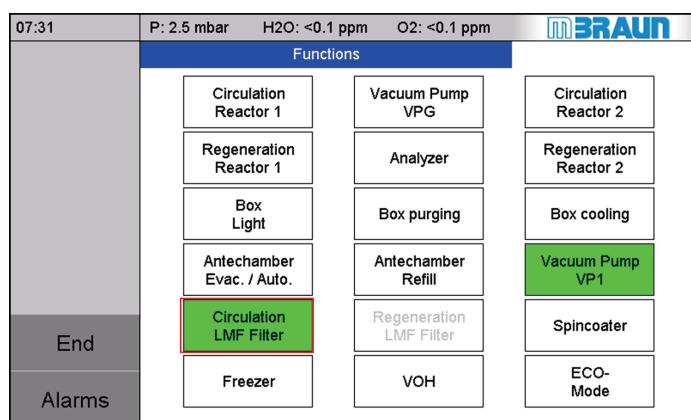
Using the function keys:

- Circulation LMF Filter 1
- Regeneration LMF Filter 1
- Vacuum pump (VPGL)  
(optional for LMF)

Or: control via Functions screen

Functions screen

01161



**Alternative:**

**Activate/deactivate circulation operation of the solvent filter via Functions screen**

Call up screen with > Start screen > **Functions** navigation button

**Activating circulation of the LMF:**

- Touch **Circulation Filter LMF** button
- the function "Regeneration" is blocked

"Circulation Filter LMF" button changes the colour from WHITE → to GREEN

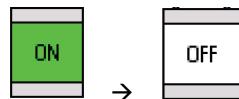


##### Status vacuum pump VPGL for LMF:

The vacuum pump LMF automatically starts operation, even if it was not previously activated

**Gas purifier solvent filter (LMF)**

"Circulation Filter LMF" button changes the colour from GREEN  
→ to WHITE



Status LMF from ON → to OFF

**Deactivating circulation of the LMF:**

- Touch [Circulation Filter LMF](#) button
- the "Regeneration" function of the LMF is ready

**7.4.4.3 Regenerate solvent filter**

The regeneration of the solvent filter is done according to the same principle as the regeneration of the gas purifying system for O<sub>2</sub> and H<sub>2</sub>O. (See Chap. 7.3.2.3)**Important:** The regeneration of the solvent filter is done with pure inert gas (operating gas) - no inert gas/hydrogen mixture may be used!

**! Systems with 1 solvent filter are equipped with a bypass valve.**

This way the solvent filter can be regenerated while the gas only circulates via the H<sub>2</sub>O/ O<sub>2</sub> reactor.

**7.4.4.4 Contemporary regeneration of RKM + LMF (optional)****With additional vacuum pump LMF (VPGL)**

A simultaneous regeneration is only possible if the LMF is equipped with its own vacuum pump (VPGL).

**With common vacuum pump:**

The regeneration of RKM and LMF take place one immediately after the other:

- The regeneration started first has priority and runs according to programme
- After confirmation of the regeneration gas test, the last started regeneration persists in a wait step (step 2 of the regeneration programme). That is, it continues to the next step only after a delay of 10 hours.

### 7.4.5 Solvent sensor (Option)

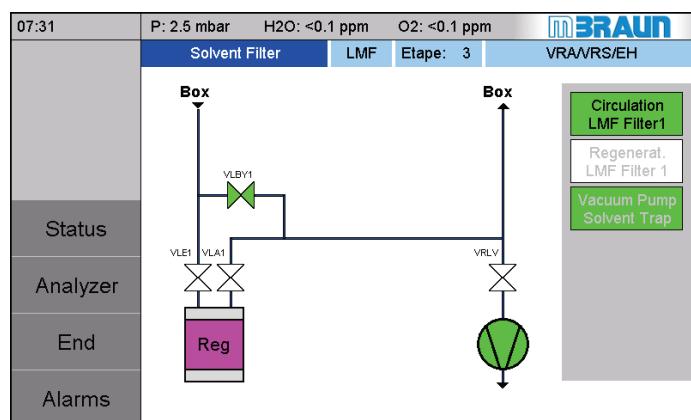
Using a solvent sensor (universal measurement gas sensor (UGP)), it is possible to measure the percentage of solvents in the box atmosphere (*Optional: see separate manual UGP*).

The measurement values distinguish themselves for the different solvents. Therefore, the value is displayed as a voltage between 0 V and 10 V. The displayed values behave proportionally to the concentration of the solution vapours that are measured after the escape from the solvent filter.

In order to detect the capacity limit of an LMF, an additional sensor can be installed, which records the concentration in the circulated gas and generates a message when the filter material is exhausted

Solvent Filter Parameter and Status screen

01402-2



**Display / settings for solvent sensor:**

Electrical voltage (Volt):

<b>Solvent Analyzer</b>		Option not available
Actual value analyzer	Alarm setpoint analyzer	
		<b>No solvent sensor installed</b>

<b>Solvent Analyzer</b>		1.1 ppm 1.5 ppm
Actual value analyzer	Alarm setpoint analyzer	

**No solvent sensor installed**

- Display of actual value (V)
- Alarm threshold parameter

#### "Analyser Solvent Filter" field

- ! With different solvents, the same alarm limit values can be triggered with different concentrations. Ask **MBRAUN** Service.
- ! The display can be adapted to a particular solvent (optional). Ask **MBRAUN** Service.

*Gas purifier solvent filter (LMF)*

<b>8.1</b>	<b>Introduction .....</b>	<b>8-2</b>
<b>8.2</b>	<b>Safety .....</b>	<b>8-2</b>
8.2.1	<i>In normal operation .....</i>	8-2
8.2.2	<i>In case of error / In case of improper operation.....</i>	8-3
<b>8.3</b>	<b>Basic principles for safe work with the inert gas box .....</b>	<b>8-5</b>
8.3.1	<i>Media connections .....</i>	8-5
8.3.2	<i>Heed openings of the box .....</i>	8-5
8.3.3	<i>Avoid material damage and leaks .....</i>	8-5
8.3.4	<i>Maintain inert gas atmosphere in the box.....</i>	8-8
8.3.5	<i>Working with the box's gloves .....</i>	8-9
8.3.6	<i>Making box ready for operation.....</i>	8-11
<b>8.4</b>	<b>Basic principles of sensor monitoring of the inert gas atmosphere</b>	<b>8-13</b>
8.4.1	<i>Display of the measurement values .....</i>	8-13
8.4.2	<i>MCS: activate / deactivate measurement devices.....</i>	8-15
<b>8.5</b>	<b>Inert gas box operation.....</b>	<b>8-18</b>
8.5.1	<i>Manual inertisation of the box (from external source) .....</i>	8-18
8.5.2	<i>Controlling box pressure and atmosphere.....</i>	8-21
8.5.3	<i>Activate/deactivate box-related functions .....</i>	8-24
8.5.4	<i>Box during circulation operation.....</i>	8-25
8.5.5	<i>Box during regeneration operation.....</i>	8-28
8.5.6	<i>Box purge (optional) .....</i>	8-29
<b>8.6</b>	<b>Customer's applications in the inert gas box .....</b>	<b>8-35</b>
<b>8.7</b>	<b>Additional functions and box equipment (optional) .....</b>	<b>8-36</b>
8.7.1	<i>Additional box equipment (optional) .....</i>	8-36
8.7.2	<i>Box safety equipment (optional).....</i>	8-37

## Introduction

# 8 Inert gas box operation

## 8.1 Introduction

The inert gas box allows the processing of materials that are sensitive to oxygen and moisture in the box. This function is secured by the set-up of the system and the controller. However, there are risks in case of error and due to incorrect operation if ambient air penetrates the box or inert box atmosphere penetrates outside and process materials come into contact with oxygen.

The quality of the box atmosphere in a closed system is ensured by adherence to the operational flows (see also antechamber processes).

The safety of the system depends entirely on the leak tightness of an undamaged box.

With this goal, safety instructions and basic rules for safe work with the inert gas box are provided here.

## 8.2 Safety

### 8.2.1 In normal operation

#### Pressure

Under normal operating conditions, a standard inert gas box is designed for a maximum interior pressure between -15 mbar and + 15 mbar (- 1500 Pa and + 1500 Pa).

Particular exceptional situations such as malfunctions of valves or components can cause extreme pressure situations in the inert gas box. At a pressure of approx. +/- 20 mbar (+/- 2000 Pa), the gloves separate from the feedthroughs.

In case of error, this type of pressure release for the box is only permissible if harmless gases and process materials are used.

Depending on the type of gases and process materials used, additional equipment may be necessary (See below).

#### Ambient air

At commissioning or after maintenance work, the box is filled with ambient air. Please note:

#### **NOTICE**

Circulation operation with ambient air in the box can damage the reactor medium and O2 and H2O sensors! Depending on the process materials, unknown risks may arise!

In case of an O2 percentage in the box atmosphere of more than 100 ppm:

- Purge box with inert gas until there is an O2 percentage in the box atmosphere less than 100 ppm

*Follow the instructions "Manual inertising of the box" in Chapter 8.5.1*

## 8.2.2 In case of error / In case of improper operation

Risk of suffocation in case of error / in case of improper operation



### DANGER

Risk of suffocation in case of improper operation!

Opening an inertised box and a large leak can cause a risk of suffocation, especially if the on-site conditions are not fulfilled!

- Never stick your head into an inertised antechamber/box!
- ▶ Always ensure good ventilation of the room!
- ▶ Make sure that flanges on the box are always sealed to the outside
- ▶ In case a glove tears, replace the glove immediately

Before opening the pane/box:

- ▶ Exchange the inert box atmosphere for ambient air!
- ▶ Open the box only after the oxygen content is > 19.5 %

*Follow the instructions in Chapter 11, Troubleshooting and Chapter 12, Maintenance (glove replacement).*

Risk of suffocation with permanently-active automatic box purging



### DANGER

With permanently-active automatic box purging with inert gases: risk of suffocation

Risk of suffocation due to escaping inert gases in case of error (such as open flange, glove tear)! There can be a permanent gas escape into the ambient air and this can endanger life and health!

- ▶ Make sure that the parameter for the "Automatic switch-off" function is activated if there is no operator at the system
- ▶ Follow the description in this operating manual!

*If the system is equipped with automatic box purging (optional) - see also Chap. 8.5.6.2*

## Basic principles for safe work with the inert gas box

### Damage due to extreme pressure circumstances

Extreme pressure circumstances can arise due to malfunctions of valves or additional components. The degree of hazard depends

- on the gases and process materials used (see below Chap. 8.2.2.2).
- on the on-site conditions - in case they are not met!



#### DANGER

In case of error, extreme pressure circumstances can cause glove tears and risk of suffocation!

- ▶ Eliminate cause of the extreme under/over pressure
- ▶ Replace the gloves quickly -  
While so doing never seal all gloveport feedthroughs with covers!
- ▶ Leave at least one gloveport feedthrough unsealed!

### 8.2.2.1 When using non-harmful gases/process materials

Under the assumption that only non-harmful gases and process materials are used, in case of error with extreme pressure circumstances (> 20 mbar) the gloves come off of the feedthrough. Therefore in the standard system there is a burst guard for the box.

#### NOTICE

In case of damage to the box/gloves of the box or in case of error (e.g. open flange): penetrating ambient air can damage sensitive process materials

- ▶ Eliminate the cause of the damage
- ▶ Check process materials/products for damage
- ▶ Before re-commissioning: inertise the box atmosphere

(See also behaviour in case of over/under pressure of the box: Chap. 11, Troubleshooting).

### 8.2.2.2 Use of hazardous process materials

Standard systems (category 0) offer no personal protection! They are not properly designed for the use of health and environment-threatening process materials (category I-IV and EX).



#### DANGER

When using hazardous process materials

- ▶ Follow the instructions in the basic safety chapter for the classification and evaluation of substances (Chapter 3)
- ▶ If necessary, ensure the application of the required additional equipment such as box pressure fuse, adherence to the O2 values and exhaust disposal!
- ▶ If necessary, please contact **MBRAUN** Service

---

*Basic principles for safe work with the inert gas box*

## 8.3 Basic principles for safe work with the inert gas box

To maintain the inert gas atmosphere in the box and prevent the above-mentioned risks: at interfaces to the system, pay particular attention to:

### 8.3.1 Media connections

- Install properly
- Heed status of the valves
- Flange (optional)
- Always note that these e.g. after uncoupling of a media connection, must be sealed to the outside immediately

### 8.3.2 Heed openings of the box

Antechamber doors:

- Only open inner antechamber door if the antechamber atmosphere matches the box atmosphere and the outer antechamber door is closed

Quick-closures on box panes (optional):

- Only open for service purposes if the box is filled with ambient air and the oxygen content is > 19.5 %.

Gloveport feedthroughs

- (*see below*)

### 8.3.3 Avoid material damage and leaks

Material damage can be caused mechanically, chemically or by the influence of (UV/laser) radiation. Please heed the following notes:

#### Avoid extreme pressure increases/drops

Particular exceptional situations such as malfunctions of valves or components can cause extreme pressure situations in the inert gas box.

Prerequisite: no hazardous process materials/processes are used

At a pressure of approx. +/- 20 mbar (+/- 2000 Pa), the gloves separate from the feedthroughs. This causes pressure release in the box, thus preventing breakage of the box panes - however only if at least one gloveport feedthrough is not sealed with a cover.

## Basic principles for safe work with the inert gas box

### Particle filter of the box:

- Heed degree of saturation / differential pressure (see Chap. 8.4.4) and replace particle filter of the box in timely fashion.

### Using additional equipment if necessary for pressure regulation:

- Over pressure securing of the box
- Automatic box purge function
- If necessary to secure pressure regulation if additional components that influence pressure are used in the box: (such as spin coater, particle absorber, feedthroughs for gas feed from external source directly into the box (etc.)
- Processes that generate high temperatures influence the box pressure; box cooling may be necessary.
- If safety equipment for pressure regulation and monitoring is installed: - never operate the system without safety equipment/alarm equipment - regularly check the functionality of the safety equipment (see Chap. 8 A, 10 ...)

### Avoid mechanical effects from moving parts:

With the use of moving parts in the box (customer's equipment):

- Monitoring of the movement with light barriers, automatic stop,
- emergency off

If using pneumatic parts: risk of ejecting material

- Regular inspection and maintenance of pneumatic equipment

### Chemical effects on materials

Make sure that the process materials used meet the specification of the material of the seals and gloves. Ask MBRAUN Service.

- If necessary, use a gripper tool
- Clean the sealing material/gloves carefully after contact with aggressive chemicals

Recommendation: with use of solvents in the box:

- Use of solvent filters and solvent sensors (see Chap. 7.4 Gas purification solvent filters)

---

## Basic principles for safe work with the inert gas box

### Minimise temperature effects (→ gloves)

Damage due to contact with hot surfaces:

With use of temperature-influencing additional equipment (freezer, heating plate, etc.), material ageing or damage to gloves and seals can arise:

- Wait before direct contact until the material has reached the ambient temperature
- If necessary, use a temperature-resistant gripper tool
- Follow the operating instructions for the special components

*Influence of temperature on the pressure in the box (see above)*

### Protect material against effects of radiation

If using additional equipment/radiation-intensive processes:

UV light / laser

- Keep gloves out of the direct radiation area
- Check material of the gloves and seals regularly for damage

### Reduce particle content in the box

In case of intensive particle formation in the box, MBRAUN recommends additional equipment:

- Differential pressure monitoring (optional)
- Use particle absorber (optional)

In case of additional equipment/particle-intensive processes in the box:

- Heed degree of saturation of the particle filters of the box: saturated particle filters reduce the gas flow and increase the differential pressure of the blower

## Basic principles for safe work with the inert gas box

### 8.3.4 Maintain inert gas atmosphere in the box

All (MCS-controlled) processes – such as circulation, antechamber processes - are aimed at maintaining a defined inert gas atmosphere in the box.

#### Prerequisite

- (Manual) initial inertising of the box (see *Chap. 8.5.1 Manual inertising of the box*)

#### For the measurement accuracy of the sensors, heed:

The controller works on the basis of the measurement values of the sensors (see also *Chap. 8.4*). Therefore always note:

- Switching of the sensors and switching on of the circulation only after reaching an O<sub>2</sub> concentration < 100ppm
- Adhere to cleaning and calibration cycles: H<sub>2</sub>O sensors (MB-MO-SE1)
- Adhere to calibration cycles: O<sub>2</sub> sensors (MB-OX-SE1)

With use of additional sensors with own power supply (optional):

Please note:

- that the sensors are switched on
- that the valves are open and the measurement cells are in the gas stream

#### In case of interruption of the circulation, note:

In a box that is not in circulation operation, the O<sub>2</sub> and H<sub>2</sub>O content constantly increase

- Keep box in circulation operation
- in case of longer interruption of the circulation: remove O<sub>2</sub> and H<sub>2</sub>O-sensitive materials from the box or seal them safely in a container

---

*Basic principles for safe work with the inert gas box*

### 8.3.5 Working with the box's gloves

The operator reaches into the box with the gloves in order to move materials in the box, execute process flows and operate the antechamber doors from inside.



Standard boxes are equipped with round gloveport feedthroughs and butyl gloves.

- 
- ! Always wear cotton gloves in the gloves in the box.
- 

#### **NOTICE**

---

Material damage and material ageing of the box's gloves due to particular materials and processes

- ▶ Check whether the gloves are suitable for the specification of your processes/process materials
- ▶ If necessary, use additional protection such as gripper tool, temperature guard
- ▶ Avoid damage to the gloves - due to sharp, pointed objects - due to rotating objects
- ▶ Prevent an exposure - to UV rays (laser)- extreme temperatures

In case of damage to the gloves, ambient air penetrates the box, disturbs the inert gas atmosphere and can damage process materials and processes in the box.

---

A leak in the gloves is indicated, e.g. by a pressure drop and unstable O<sub>2</sub> and H<sub>2</sub>O values in the box.

- ▶ Check the material of the gloves

If the system is equipped with an automatic function box purge, → an error message appears on the touch panel (See Chap. 11).

**Basic principles for safe work with the inert gas box**

---

- !
- For the case that a glove change is required during ongoing operation:
    - ▶ Practice behaviour in case of error and in case of glove replacement regularly (See *Chapter 11, Troubleshooting and your operation-specific standard operating manual as well as Chapter 12, Maintenance*)
    - ▶ Always keep appropriate spare gloves for the box at the ready (see *Chap. 13, Spare parts list*)
-

*Basic principles for safe work with the inert gas box***8.3.6 Making box ready for operation****Check at start of work/beginning of the week \*)**

		Power supply/ switch on	Function on the panel	Valve check: open	Visual inspection of settings
ECO-Mode (optional)			x OFF		
Media supply				x	
Operating as				x	Through- flow (pressure reducing valve)
Regeneration gas	Gas quantity			x	
Gas output to gas purifier				x	
Gas output to exhaust air					
Electrical system		x			
Gloves					Material
Seals					Material
Sensors (box + pipework)			x ON		
H2O			x ON		
O2			x ON		
UGP (optional)		x	x ON	x	
GSU (optional)		x	x ON	x	
H2 / other (optional)		x	x ON	x	x
Additional components in the box	Spincoater, particle absorber	Stand- alone: (x)	x ON	x	
Electrical system		x			
Cooling water				x	
Light curtain / warning equipment	Check functionality				

---

*Basic principles for safe work with the inert gas box*

**Securing the system (nights, weekends)**

In case of interruption of circulation operation:

- ▶ Remove sensitive materials from the box and secure
- ▶ Activate ECO-Mode (optional)

*see Chap. 6 A.*

***Basic principles of sensor monitoring of the inert gas atmosphere***

## 8.4 Basic principles of sensor monitoring of the inert gas atmosphere

In standard systems, there is generally a measurement of the oxygen and moisture content of the box atmosphere (optional equipment).

! The sensors MB-OX-SE1 and MB-MO-SE1 are described in separate documentation.

For special requirements, additional measurement sensors can be used (optional)

- e.g. a universal gas measurement probe (UGP) for the use of solvents
- With the integration of measurement sensors into the MCS: additional display of the measurement value on the touch panel;
- or special display on the separate combi monitor

*see additional chapter 10 A ff. and supplier documentation*

### 8.4.1 Display of the measurement values

Box pressure, H<sub>2</sub>O and/or O<sub>2</sub> measurement values are displayed on the touch panel. If additional sensors are used (optional: solvents, helium, N<sub>2</sub>, etc.) there is an additional display.

**Measurement ranges (standard)**

Oxygen sensor	MB-OX-SE-1	< 0.1 ... 1000 ppm
Moisture sensor:	MB-MO-SE-1	< 0.1 ... 500 ppm

**Display of the measurement values**

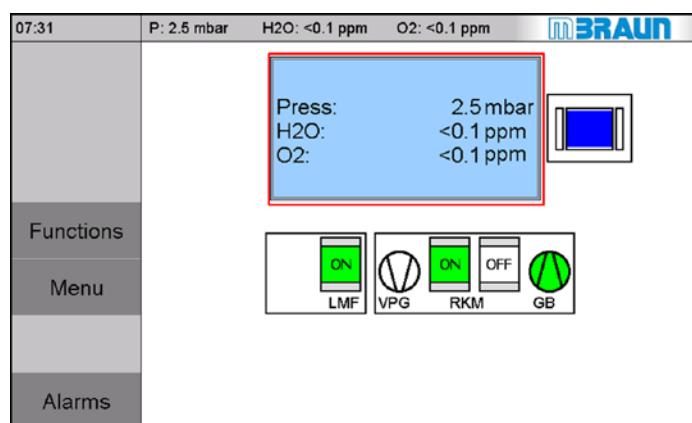
The measurement values are displayed on the permanent line and on the start screen:

P: 2,5 mbar    H<sub>2</sub>O: < 0,1 ppm    O<sub>2</sub>: < 0,1 ppm    **mBRAUN**

Display of the measurement values on the permanent line on each screen (*exception: start screen, see below*)

**Start screen**

01103-1



Display measurement values  
of the box atmosphere  
(pressure, H<sub>2</sub>O, O<sub>2</sub> etc.)

(see Chap. 5)

## Basic principles of sensor monitoring of the inert gas atmosphere

## Display constellations:



No sensor configured

H2O:	Switched off
O2:	Switched off

Sensor switched off

H2O:	< 0,1 ppm
O2:	< 0,1 ppm

Operating indicator

**Dependencies H2O sensor – O2 sensor**

The H2O sensor is only switched on  
<999.9 ppm

→ if the O2 concentration in the box is

(see also: Chap. 6, Operating modes, commissioning)

! If a MB-OX-SE3 Sensor is used, sensor readings are displayed in ppm units. Higher values as 1000 ppm are displayed in % units.

! The minimum displayed value is 0,1 ppm

## Basic principles of sensor monitoring of the inert gas atmosphere

## 8.4.2 MCS: activate / deactivate measurement devices

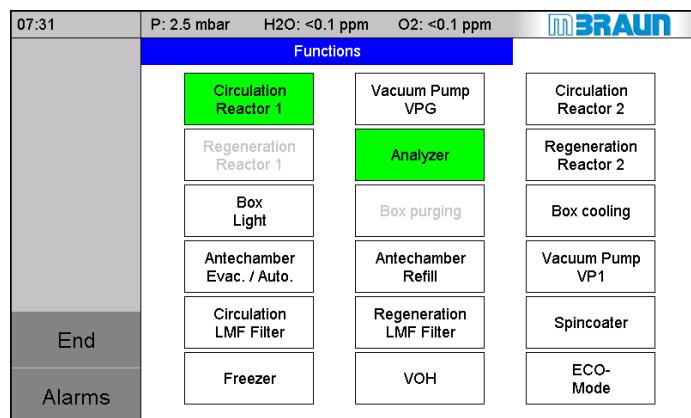
**Please note:**

If separate measurement devices with their own power supply are used:

- Switch device ON → only then can activation be done via the MCS

## Function keys

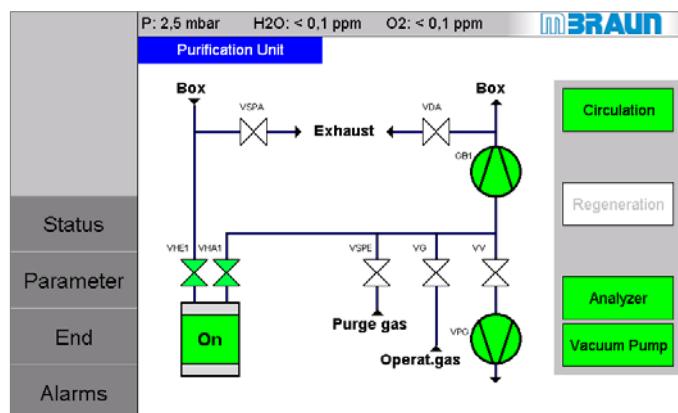
01160-1

**Variant 1:**

Functions screen

## Gas purifier

01310-2

**Variant 2:**

Purification Unit screen

Analyzer



Analyzer

**Switching on**

- Touch the [Analyzer](#) button

The colour of the function key changes from WHITE → to GREEN

The colour of the function key changes back to WHITE

**Switching off**

- Touch the [Analyzer](#) button again

## Basic principles of sensor monitoring of the inert gas atmosphere

### Please note:

The sensors are switched OFF automatically after 30 minutes if the box is not in operation -- that is, neither circulation nor box purging are active.

This serves to protect the measurement cells that should always be purged with box gas.

### Securing measurement precision

- ! The operation of the sensors with an oxygen content greater than 1000 ppm (e.g. in air) must be avoided.

After an exposure to the ambient air, it can take several hours until the sensor provides accurate measurement values about inert gas conditions again.

### Calibration of the measurement devices

**MBRAUN** measurement devices are calibrated at the factory before delivery.

The calibration cycles depend on the use of the measurement devices and the gases used (purity, trace gases, etc.).

- ! It is recommended that you have the measurement devices calibrated by **MBRAUN** technicians once a year. Please use the included decontamination explanation in *Chap. 12*.
- For more information, please contact **MBRAUN** Service.

### Moisture sensor MB-MO-SE1

- ! In order to achieve optimal measurement results, the sensor element MB MO-SE-1 should be cleaned routinely every three months or at the latest after 2000 hours of operation.

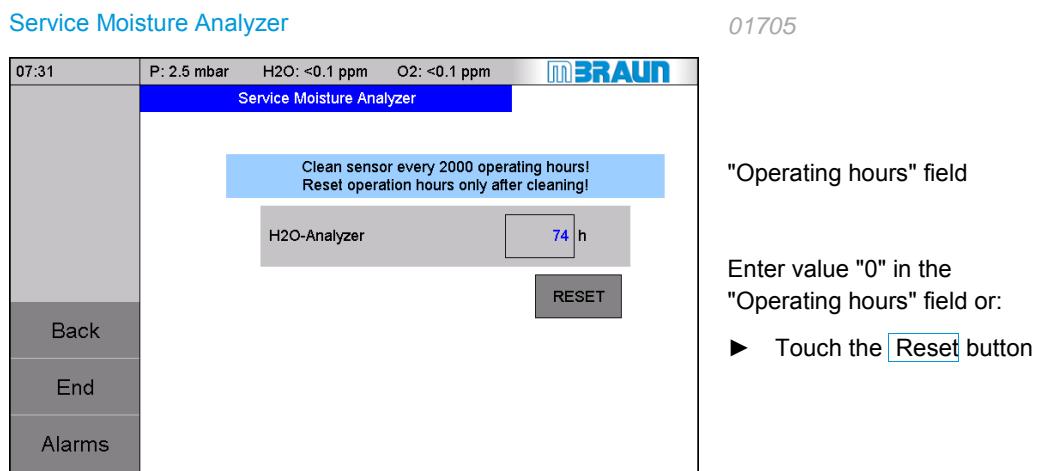
### **NOTICE**

Insufficient maintenance of the moisture sensor causes imprecise measurements and compromises the cleanliness of the box atmosphere, after 2000 hours of operation a cleaning of the sensor is necessary!

- Clean the moisture sensor at the latest when asked to do so by the warning message (96).

*Basic principles of sensor monitoring of the inert gas atmosphere***Clean moisture sensor, reset operating hours**

Call the **Service Moisture Analyzer** screen from the **General Parameters** screen.



"Operating hours" field

Enter value "0" in the  
"Operating hours" field or:

- Touch the **Reset** button

If more frequent maintenance should be conducted, the parameter "2000 Operating hours" can also be reduced.

## Inert gas box operation

### 8.5 Inert gas box operation

#### 8.5.1 Manual inertisation of the box (from external source)

If the box contains ambient air – such as on commissioning, after service work or in case of disturbances (leaks, glove tear) – the box must be purged. Only if the remaining oxygen content has a value of less than approx. 100 ppm is the box prepared for the switching on of the sensors and for the change to circulation operation (see above, *sensor monitoring* and Chap. 7.3.2).

##### **NOTICE**

Damage to the sensors and the reactor medium due to O<sub>2</sub> and H<sub>2</sub>O in the ambient air!

Circulation operation in ambient air can cause overheating of the reactor material and destruction of the valves and damage to the O<sub>2</sub> and H<sub>2</sub>O sensors.

If ambient air gets into the box:

- ▶ Purge box with inert gas from external source until there is an O<sub>2</sub> percentage in the box atmosphere of less than 100 ppm

The external inertisation can take place in two ways:

- Manual inertising In standard operation the purging of the box with operating gas of medium purity from external source (e.g. bottle supply). This procedure is described below.
- MCS-controlled inertising via the manual or automatic box purging function (Optional: see *Chap. 8.5.6 Purging the box*)

##### **Prerequisites for the manual inertising of the box:**

##### **WARNING**

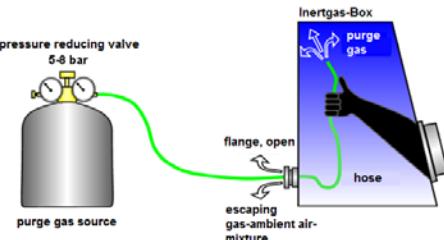
Risk of suffocation if the on-site conditions were not adhered to!

If the on-site conditions cannot be adhered to:

- ▶ divert used purging gas via an in-house exhaust air system!
- > the installation is complete (see Chap. 4)
- > All antechamber doors are closed
- > Equipment components in the box are switched off
- > Controller - touch panel: the system functions "regeneration" and "circulation" are switched off

Pay special attention to all areas of the box in which there are small gas movements (corners and areas surrounding installed devices), especially open and purge closed areas (e.g. storage containers, equipment such as freezer, spincoater, etc.).

## Action sequence manual inertising of the box with a hose

Step	► Action at gas source	► Handling in the box (with fixtures)
1	Provide purge as supply equipment (e.g. bottle) with pressure reducing valve.	
2	Check purge gas quantity: approx. 10 - 12 m <sup>3</sup> per 1 m <sup>3</sup> box volume	
3		Switch installed components (refrigerator, drying oven, etc.) in the box OFF;
4	Connect gas hose to purge gas supply.	
5	Set pressure reducing valve to 3-5 bar and open.	
6		Remove blind flange on the rear side of the box.
7		Insert gas hose into the box through the open flange.
8		Use gloves to reach gas hose into the box and purge the inside of the box from top to bottom with circular motions. Purge intermediate areas, corners, edges carefully.
9		Installed equipment with closed areas (refrigerators, drying ovens) etc.) Open interior space:- match temperature to room temperature (e.g. in case of ovens, refrigerator) - Purge interior space carefully
10	After through-flow of the calculated gas quantity:  Close gas source	
11		Remove gas hose from the box – and while so doing, cover the flange opening with a flat hand
12		Close opening immediately with blind flange on the rear side of the box
13		<i>On the touch panel:</i> In case of multi-box operation (optional): ⇒ The inertised box can be switched on

**Inert gas box operation****Systems with measurement devices: checking the oxygen content in the box**

For systems equipped with the oxygen measuring device MB-OX-SE1 (O<sub>2</sub> sensor) :

**After the purging: Determine O<sub>2</sub> value:**

Step	Prerequisite	Action: touch panel:	Action: Box
>	The action sequence "manual purging" is carried out		
1	Through-flow of approx. 5 m <sup>3</sup> purging gas per 1 m <sup>3</sup> box volume	[Multi-box system: switch box on] Switch circulation ON: establish slight over pressure	
2		Switching measurement devices on (Functions screen)	
3		Observe display of O <sub>2</sub> value.	
4	Display O <sub>2</sub> value: - within approx. 10 sec. a declining tendency and - O <sub>2</sub> < 100 ppm	<i>Prerequisite is not fulfilled:</i> Switch circulation OFF	
5			Repeat: sequence manual purging for approx. 2 minutes (see above steps 4 to 12)
6	Display O <sub>2</sub> value: - within approx. 10 sec. a declining tendency and - O <sub>2</sub> < 100 ppm	<i>Prerequisite is fulfilled:</i> The normal operating state is reached – continue the "Circulation" function	

**Systems with 2 measurement devices: oxygen sensor MB-OX-SE1 and moisture sensor MB MO-SE-1**

The switching on of the moisture sensor is done depending on the oxygen sensor:

Step	Prerequisite	Controller
1	Oxygen sensor: O <sub>2</sub> concentration in the box is < 999.9 ppm	The moisture sensor MB-MO-SE1 is switched on

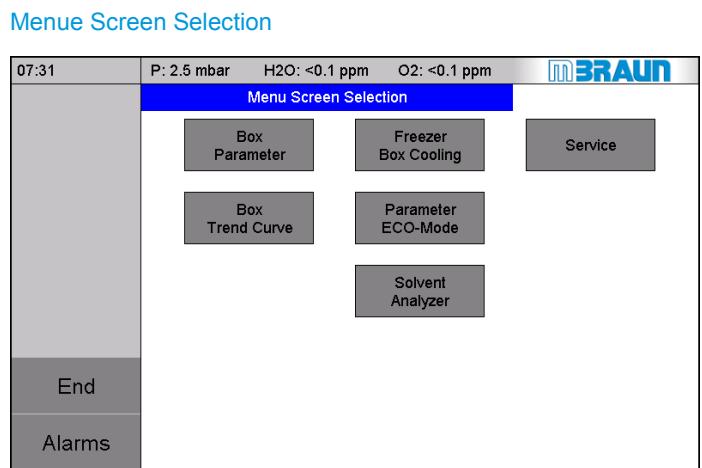
## 8.5.2 Controlling box pressure and atmosphere

### 8.5.2.1 Overview of parameters

The table in *Chapter 5.6 Pre-set parameters* provides an overview of the pre-set parameters for a standard system.

### 8.5.2.2 Parameters for the box

#### Navigating with the Menu Screen Selection



01120

Selection of box-related parameters:

- Box pressure → Box atmosphere
- Temperature (box cooling, freezer – optional)

**Inert gas box operation****Box pressure parameters**

01500-2

07:31	P: 2.5 mbar    H <sub>2</sub> O: <0.1 ppm    O <sub>2</sub> : <0.1 ppm	<b>Parameter Box Pressure</b>	<b>MBRAUN</b>
Parameter Boxatmos.  End  Alarms	Max. upper working limit: <b>4.0</b> mbar Min. lower working limit: <b>-4.0</b> mbar Hysteresis UWP: <b>1.0</b> mbar Hysteresis LWP: <b>1.0</b> mbar Upper alarm limit: <b>15.0</b> mbar Lower alarm limit: <b>-15.0</b> mbar		

**Input of the parameters:**

- Touch numeric field:
- Input is done using the alphanumeric field

*The basic principles for the function of pressure regulation are described in Chap. 2.3.3.*

**Operational limits – setting alarm limits:**

- > The value of the upper operational limit must be less than the value of the upper alarm limit,
- > The value of the lower operational limit must be greater than the value of the lower alarm limit,

**Hysteresis OAG / UAG (upper/lower working limit):**

- > The value should not be set lower than 2 mbar in order to prevent turbulent behaviour of the box pressure regulation

**Upper and lower alarm limit**

- > Setting only by **MBRAUN** Service

**Parameters for box atmosphere (O<sub>2</sub> and H<sub>2</sub>O)****Parameters for box atmosphere (O<sub>2</sub> and H<sub>2</sub>O)**

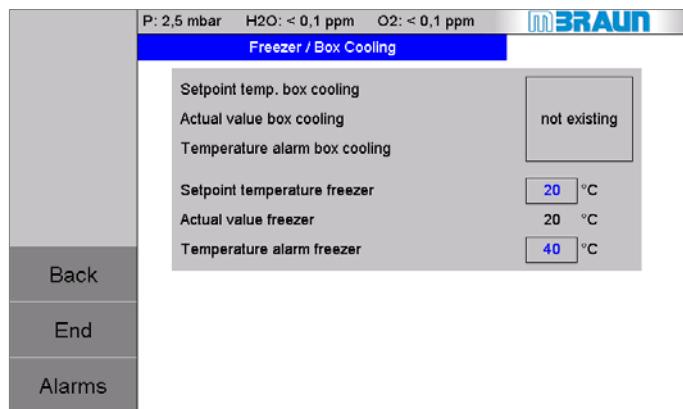
01500-1

07:31	P: 2.5 mbar    H <sub>2</sub> O: <0.1 ppm    O <sub>2</sub> : <0.1 ppm	<b>Parameter Box Atmosphere</b>	<b>MBRAUN</b>
Back  End  Alarms	<b>Alarm Limits</b> H <sub>2</sub> O alarm: <b>20.0</b> ppm O <sub>2</sub> alarm: <b>20.0</b> ppm		
	<b>Min./Max. Values</b> H <sub>2</sub> O: max: 1.1 ppm min: 0.1 ppm    O <sub>2</sub> : max: 1.0 ppm min: 0.1 ppm <b>RESET</b>		

**Temperature parameters**

Temperature parameters (freezer / box cooling)

01590-1



**!** The input fields are only active if the system is equipped with the appropriate components. If not, then "not present" is indicated in the input field.

**!** Settings and functions of freezer and box cooling:

*see separate Chapter / Documentation 10 A. ff and Chap. 15 Supplier documentation.*

Temperature	Setpoint	Actual value
Box cooling	10°C to 40°C	<i>see display</i>
Freezer	-35°C to 10°C	<i>see display</i>

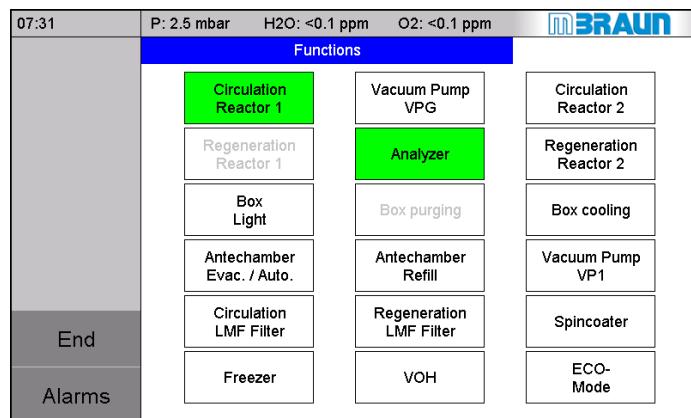
**Purge box parameters (optional)**

*See below, Chap.8.5.6.2, MCS-controlled*

**Inert gas box operation****8.5.3 Activate/deactivate box-related functions**

Functions screen

01160-1



The box-related functions are switched ON and OFF with the "Functions" screen:

- Touch the button in question:

<b>Box Light</b>	Switch the box light on/off
<b>Analyzer</b>	Switch measurement devices (O2 and H2O) on and off
<b>Circulation Reactor 1</b>	Switch circulation function on/off <i>See Chap. 8.7 Purging the box</i> <i>Box is in operation: circulation here via reactor 1 see also Chap. 7 Gas purifier</i>
<b>Box Purging</b>	Switches the "box purge function" or the "automatic box purge" function on/off <i>see Chap. 8.8 Example above: the function is blocked since the circulation function is active</i>
<b>Box Cooling</b>	Switches "Box cooling" function on/off
<b>Freezer</b>	Switches "freezer" function on/off <i>Before loading the freezer, wait until the temp. has stabilised.</i>
<b>Spincoater</b>	Integrated additional components (optional) – function as autonomous units, are activated/deactivated via the touch panel: <i>here: Spincoater</i> Switches on the off the additional components that are used in the box

## 8.5.4 Box during circulation operation

The basic principles of circulation operation are described in Chapter 7 Gas purifier.

For the operation of the box, please heed the following peculiarities with respect to the management of the box atmosphere

### 8.5.4.1 Distinctions 1- and 2-reactor systems

#### 1-RKM system

In circulation operation, the box atmosphere circulates between the box and gas purifier. The O<sub>2</sub> and H<sub>2</sub>O content of the box atmosphere is monitored by sensors (optional) and a stable box atmosphere is maintained according to the parameters set.

*The circulation is switched off during the course of the regeneration programme and the function blocked. It can only be activated again after completion of the regeneration programme.*

#### 1-RKM with automatic circulation

If the automatic circulation is switched on, the circulation starts automatically after completion of the regeneration programme (see Chap. 7.3.1.2).

#### 2-RKM system

A 2-RKM system allows continuous processes in the box since one purifier unit apiece is in circulation operation, while the other is being regenerated or is in stand-by mode. A stable box atmosphere is thus guaranteed without interruption.

#### Blocked functions

During circulation operation of a purifier unit, the following functions are blocked:

- "Regeneration" function
- "Purge box" function

See Chap. 7.3.2

---

#### NOTICE

---

Process materials can be compromised if the circulation is switched off since the degree of purity of the box atmosphere declines proportionately over time.

Process materials that require great purity of the box atmosphere

- ▶ secure in a container that can be sealed
  - ▶ remove from the box
-

## Inert gas box operation

### 8.5.4.2 Pressure regulation and monitoring

For normal operation, the box pressure is MCS-controlled in a defined range.

#### Status box pressure – Status gloves

The status of the box pressure can be determined from the status of the gloves:

Over pressure: gloves directed to the outside

Under pressure: gloves directed to the inside

#### Display on the touch panel

Box cooling:	20 °C
Press:	2,5 mbar
H2O:	< 0,1 ppm
O2:	< 0,1 ppm

Display of measurement values

on the Start screen

P: 2,5 mbar H2O: < 0,1 ppm O2: < 0,1 ppm 

on the permanent line

#### MCS-controlled pressure monitoring

With the defined parameters, the pressure regulation is set within the operating limits and the gas feed/gas removal is regulated.

*For functioning of the pressure regulation: see Chapter 2.3.3 Setting the parameters for the operating limits, hysteresis and alarm limits: see 8.6.2*

#### Detection of open pane or glove tear.

If on activation of one of the two valves VG/VV after a delay time a defined pressure increase or pressure drop ramp is not achieved, then an error message "Box open or glove tear" is displayed on the panel.

This monitoring is only active in the pressure range  $\geq + 2 \text{ mbar}$  and  $\leq - 2 \text{ mbar}$  ( $- 2 \text{ mbar} \geq P \geq + 2 \text{ mbar}$ ).

Settings on the panel may only be made by **MBRAUN** Service.

### Setting pressure with the foot switch

By pressing the foot switch, it is possible to adapt the pressure in the inert gas box within the defined operating range as needed (see 2.3.3.3).



Reduce pressure: ↓

- ▶ Press left foot pedal.

Increase pressure: ↑

- ▶ Press right foot pedal.

! For safety reasons, the activation of the foot switch is limited to 7.5 sec. After that, the foot switch has to be pressed again.

#### Keep pressure constant in case of reaching into the gloves of the box:

If you want to reach into the gloves in a box with positive box pressure:

- ▶ first reduce pressure slightly.

If you remove your hands from the gloves:

- ▶ increase pressure slightly

### Mechanical securing box over pressure

**⚠ WARNING** Only permitted with use of non-hazardous process materials / process gases!

#### Replacing the gloves

In case of error (e.g. defective valve) and increase of box pressure to > 20mbar:

- The gloves separate from the gloveport feedthrough.
- Thus the box/box pane are protected against rupture (see also Chap. 11 - Behaviour in case of error)

#### Securing of box over pressure via pressure control valve (optional)

**⚠ WARNING**

With the use of sensitive process materials (product protection) or process materials / process gases which are hazardous to health and/or the environment (personal protection), additional protective equipment such as the following is necessary

- Box pressure control valve (optional)
- and connection to an in-house exhaust system (optional)

See also optional additional chapter 8 A.

## Inert gas box operation

### 8.5.5 Box during regeneration operation

The basic principles of regeneration operation are described in Chapter 7 Gas purifier. For the operation of the box, please note the following peculiarities:

#### 1-reactor system (RKM)

For systems with one reactor, there is no gas purification process during regeneration and the quality of the box atmosphere declines proportionately with time.

##### Recommendation

During regeneration, processes in the box should only be continued if non-sensitive materials are used.

Otherwise regeneration should, if possible, be done after the end of a work day overnight so that on the next day the required quality of the box atmosphere in circulation operation is available.

#### 2-reactor system (RKM)

In the 2-reactor system, 1 reactor apiece is in circulation and 1 reactor is in regeneration operation. This guarantees a stable box atmosphere. **Processes in the box can be carried out without interruption.**

#### 1- or 2-reactor system (RKM) and solvent filter (LMF)

##### NOTICE

Solvent vapours attack the sealing material of the box panes and antechambers and damage the reactor medium of the H<sub>2</sub>O and O<sub>2</sub> reactors.

##### Manual LMF:

With use of solvents in the box, it must be heeded that the solvent filter is always switched on (required for manual LMF) - (see Chap. 7.4).

##### Automatic LMF

An automatic LMF is switched on by the MCS.

##### Recommendation

If there is a high concentration of solvent vapours due to processes in the box and/or continuous processes in the box are necessary:

- ▶ Work with a 2-filter LMF system where 1 reactor can work in circulation and 1 in regeneration operation
- ▶ If necessary use a solvent sensor (UGP)

Please contact MB RAUN Service.

### 8.5.6 Box purge (optional)

For the purging of the box with direct feed of inert gases, there are optionally 2 different functions available that are controlled via the touch panel:

Function	Description	Valves	Chapter
<a href="#">Box purging</a> MB-BS-200	Optional function, 200 l/min	VSE + VSA	8.5.6.2
Automatic box purge MB-BS-200-PLC	Prerequisite: equipment of the system with MB-BS-200; Automatic is set and activated/deactivated using parameters		8.5.6.3
MB-BS-ECO*	Optional function, 110 l/min, Prerequisite: the system is equipped with the ECO mode feature	VG + VDA	

\* never use this function for inertising a glovebox. The purge gas inlet sits in the pipework downstream to the glovebox outlet near the measurement points of the analyser. Therefore the initial readings of the analyser indicate the quality of the purge gas. After an extended purge time, the analyser indicate the quality of the glovebox atmosphere.

#### Inertising the box:

In addition to the manual inertising of the box in standard systems via hose from external source (*Standard - see above*) there is the option for the inertising using the touch panel.

- Inertising via touch panel:
  - Activation of the "purge box" function by pressing the [Purge Box](#) button

This function is only available if the circulation operation is switched OFF.

#### In operation for balancing out / maintaining the inert box atmosphere

- Box purge via touch panel (optional) [Box purging](#) (with circulation switched OFF and higher gas flow)
- Automatic box purge -(MB-BS-200-PLC) (optional): here the circulation operation is interrupted only during the automatic O2-initiated purging.



- If prior to the activation of the box purge function, the LMF is activated
  - the LMF is purge as well. This is recommended for an inertisation of an LMF
  - If the LMF is already loaded with solvents, solvent vapors are carried away by the purge gas. The purge outlet therefore has to be connected to an inhouse disposal system
  - If the LMF is deactivated prior to the activation of the purge function, there is no purge of the LMF

**Inert gas box operation****8.5.6.1 Start of the "purge box" function (optional)**

The "purge box" function is only available if the system is equipped with the MB-BS-200 function, which allows quick purging of the box.

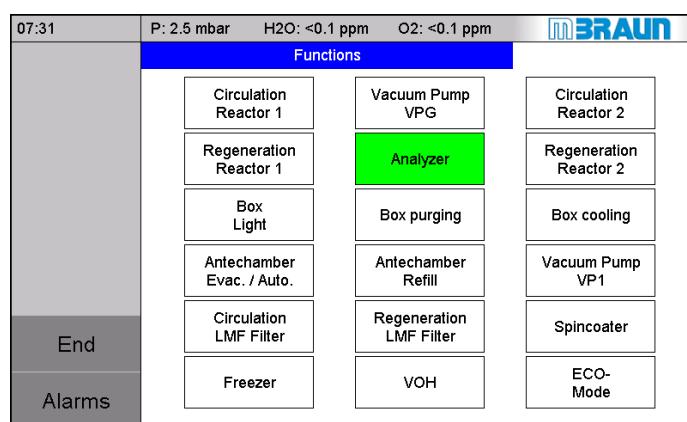
The inertising or pre-purging of the box is activated manually via the "Purge box" function on the touch panel:

**Manual activation / deactivation****Prerequisites:**

- > All connections (external operating gas supply, connection to in-house exhaust system) are made properly
- > There is sufficient purging gas (=operating gas from external source)
- > The system is switched on
- > The box to be purged is switched on (optional for multi-box operation)
- > The "Circulation" system function is switched OFF
- > The function key is released

**Operation:****Function keys**

01160-4

**Prerequisite**

- > Circulation reactor (1 + 2) switched off
- > **Box purging** button enabled

**Activate the function:**

- Touch **Box purging** button

**Deactivate:**

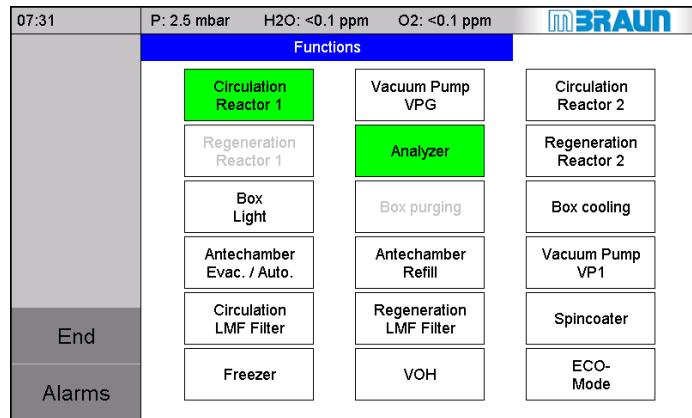
- Touch **Box purging** button again

**Safety switch-off of the "Purge box" function**

The duration of the purging is pre-set to 60 min. and can be set on the "Purge box parameters" screen. See the following section – Automatic box purge.

## Function keys

01160-1

**After ending: activate circulation**

Switch Purge box OFF

With activation of the **Circulation Reactor** button

- the circulation starts
- the **Purge Box** button is blocked

## Inert gas box operation

### 8.5.6.2 Automatic box purge - (optional)

With the automatic box purge, there is an MCS-controlled purging of the box from an external gas source. The purging of the box is activated at a defined limit value.

Measurement values for various materials can be programmed in the MCS as reference values – generally oxygen content is the reference value, other measurement values such as He, N<sub>2</sub>, H<sub>2</sub> or solvents can be set up optionally (see also *Chap. 8.4*).

This provides a constant quality of the box atmosphere. For example, in case of error during circulation operation, an increase of the O<sub>2</sub> concentration in the box is prevented.

#### Safety



#### DANGER

Risk of suffocation due to escaping inert gases in case of error (such as open flange, glove tear) if the automatic box purging is permanently activated!

If the operator is away from the system (break times, overnight, weekend):

- ▶ Make sure that the parameter for the "Automatic switch-off" function is activated (see *automatic box purge parameters, next page*)
- ▶ If the automatic switch-off is deactivated: ensure a securing of the ambient air in the work room (ensure sufficient ventilation, connected Purge box output to an in-house exhaust air system).

#### Safety switch-off:

In case of error – such as glove tear, open flange or open pane – there is an O<sub>2</sub> increase in the box and with permanently-activated box purging, unlimited operating gas is fed in, which gets into the ambient air.

In order to limit this potential risk of a permanent feed of operating gas into the ambient air, the duration of the automatic box purging can be limited via parameter setting. It is pre-set by **MBRAUN** to 60 min.

#### Exception – responsibility of the operator:

Depending on the room size, ventilation or connection of the box purge output to an in-house exhaust air system, the automatic deactivation can be switched off (see *below, Parameters section*). The operator must ensure that there are no risks to people in the room.

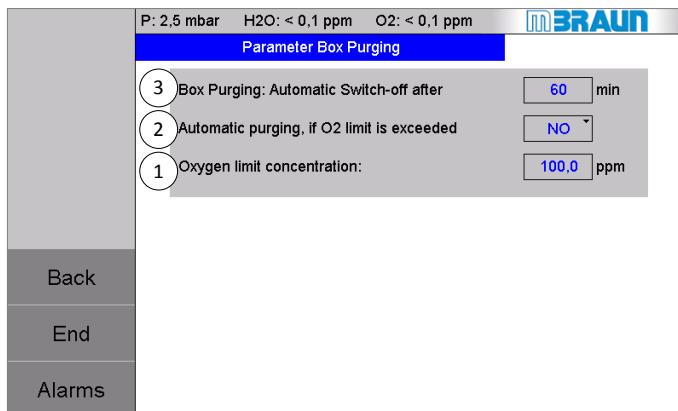
Please heed the safety instruction above and follow the description in *Chap. 8.8.1*:

## Automatic box purge parameters

! Heed the information above and the safety instructions.

## Box purge parameters

500-4



On the "Parameter Box Purging" screen, the following can be set:

(1)

**Limit value**

→ adjustable value

for the switching on of the automatic box purging function  
(here: O<sub>2</sub>)

(2)

**Activation / deactivation**The automatic "Purge box" function can be switched  
optionally ON or OFF.

(3)

**Automatic switch-off****Risk of suffocation!**

Adjustment range: 1..999 min ;  
Default: 60 min value 0 min =  
function deactivated

If the function is deactivated, the error case is no longer  
secured!In case of gross leaks in the box, there can be an  
unintentional gas feed into the room!

- ▶ Heed safety instructions!
- ▶ Secure ambient air (ventilation / connection to exhaust  
air system)!

**Switching on again**The purging function can be started again manually right  
away.

## Inert gas box operation

### How the PLC-controlled automatic box purge works

On the Purge box parameters screen:

- Automatic purge on exceeding of the oxygen concentration is selected with "Yes":
  - The inert gas box is purged immediately automatically with exceeding of the set O<sub>2</sub> alarm threshold.

The hysteresis for the deactivation of the automatic box purging is 10% of the specified limit value.

**Example:**

Limit value	= 100 ppm
automatic purging ON at O <sub>2</sub>	≥ 100 ppm automatic
automatic purging OFF at O <sub>2</sub>	≤ 90 ppm

### Activation of the automatic processes

#### Prerequisite

- > Parameter O<sub>2</sub> limit value is defined
- > Automatic purge on exceeding of the O<sub>2</sub> concentration is selected with "Yes"
- > Circulation is switched ON
- > Measurement devices are switched ON and work perfectly

(see parameter box 8.8.2)

#### Automatic initiation of the box purging

Status	Initiated process of the automatic box purge
Limit value is exceeded	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>→ Circulation operation is interrupted</li> <li>→ Gas is fed into the box</li> <li>→ Monitoring of the box values</li> </ul>

#### Automatic end box purge:

Status	Initiated process of the automatic box purge
Limit value is under-run again:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>→ Gas input and output valves are closed</li> <li>→ Circulation operation starts automatically</li> </ul>

## 8.6 Customer's applications in the inert gas box

Additional customer equipment, process materials and processes are only permissible in the course of the proper use of the MBRAUN system.

- Please heed the information about the safety concept in Chapter 3, Safety.

It is the customer's responsibility to determine the degree of risk of the applications and if necessary to install and apply additional safety equipment and functions.

- If necessary, a specific standard operating manual must be created for the conditions on-site.

## Additional functions and box equipment (optional)

## 8.7 Additional functions and box equipment (optional)

## 8.7.1 Additional box equipment (optional)

Designation	Function	Separate document item Nr.	See chap.
<b>Box atmosphere:</b>			
Particle absorber (various service areas)	Suctioning of particles from processing in the box	misc.	10 A..ff
Differential pressure sensor	Monitoring of the degree of saturation of the particle filter	Supplier documentation	15
UGP	Universal measurement device for various gases/solvent vapours	2605008	10 A..ff
GSU	Determination of a specific gas mixture (H <sub>2</sub> O/ O <sub>2</sub> )	2604856	10 A..ff
<b>Box temperature</b>			
Box cooling RKI 80-200-300	Cooling of the box atmosphere	2605006	8 C
<b>Cooling/heating of process materials</b>			
Refrigerator/externally-mounted cooling container	Cooling of process materials	--	10 A..ff
Vacuum dry cabinet VC20	Drying of process materials in a vacuum	Supplier documentation	14
<b>Cooling of additional equipment</b>			
Circulation cooler	Cooling of process heat / additional equipment in the box	2604760	
<b>Additional equipment for processes in the box</b>			
Spincoater MB-SC-200	Coating processes semi-conductor - (spinning)	2605001	10 A..ff
<i>Multi-box systems</i>	Allow operation with various processes		8 B

### 8.7.2 Box safety equipment (optional)

Designation	Function	Document item Nr.	See chap.
Over pressure safety valve MB-OSV	Securing of the box pressure; tear securing of the gloves		8 A
Light curtain	Reach-in guard against moving parts in the box	Supplier documentation	8 A ..ff
UV protection pane	Protection against UV radiation		8 A.. ff
Box purge from external source	For securing inert gas operation in case of error of the circulation operation		8.5.6

*Additional functions and box equipment (optional)*

---

<b>8 A.1 Oxygen Analyzer MB OX-SE-1 .....</b>	<b>2</b>
8 A.1.1 Design overview.....	2
8 A.1.2 Technical Data .....	3
8 A.1.3 Connection .....	3
<b>8 A.2 Moisture Analyzer (MB MO-SE-1).....</b>	<b>4</b>
8 A.2.1 Design overview.....	4
8 A.2.2 Technical Data .....	4
8 A.2.3 Connection .....	5
<b>8 A.3 Calibration of measurements .....</b>	<b>5</b>

**Oxygen Analyzer MB OX-SE-1****8 A      Analyzer (Optional)**

Applies to systems with optional H<sub>2</sub>O and/or O<sub>2</sub> analyzers:

The following analyzers can be used with the system:



Oxygen analyzer **MB-OX-SE-1**



Moisture analyzer **MB MO-SE-1**

**8 A.1    Oxygen Analyzer MB OX-SE-1**

The MB-OX-SE-1 sensor is designed to control the atmosphere of **MBRAUN** Systems for residual Oxygen content. The measuring range is <0.1 to 1000 ppm. The measuring range from <0.1 – 100 ppm is linear.

The semiconductor sensor made of Zirconium dioxide is specific for oxygen, but because of the high sensor temperature and the catalytic activity of the platinum electrodes of the sensor there are low cross-sensitivities for hydrogen as well as possible reactions with aggressive gaseous substances, that can reduce the operational life of the sensor.

- 
- !** Operating the sensor at oxygen levels of >1000 ppm (e.g. in air) does not damage the sensor element irreversibly, but it should be avoided. If exposed to air, it will take several hours until the sensor will measure low oxygen levels correctly in Inert Gas.
- 

**8 A.1.1    Design overview**

The MB-OX-SE1 consists of the sensor and a box with integrated electronics and a gas-tight DN40-KF clamp flange. The sensor is protected by a protective cage against mechanical damage. The sensor leads are connected to the electronics by a vacuum-tight feed-through. The electronics are contained in an airtight box mounted directly behind the DN40-KF flange.

The electronic measuring equipment is supplied with 24 VDC. It provides a voltage signal of 0-10 VDC proportional to the oxygen concentration.

Via an additional input, the heater of the sensor element is controlled. If the external input is not used, a jumper has to be set at the electronics.

### 8 A.1.2 Technical Data

<b>Mechanical</b>	Length over all:	190 mm, height 80 mm, depth 58 mm
	Sensor-part:	length 45 mm, diameter 26 mm
	Flange:	NW 40 KF
	Weight:	0.7 kg
<b>Electrical</b>	Supply voltage:	24 VDC ± 10%
<b>Environment</b>	Ambient temperature:	+15 to +27 °C
	Pressure:	800 to 1200 mbar (Differential pressure sensor to electronics max. ≈200 mbar)
<b>Measuring</b>	Range:	<0.1 - 1000 ppm oxygen
	Sensitivity:	10 mV / ppm
	Response time (0 - 90 %):	approx.. 10 sec (0 - 90 %)
	Warm-up time:	10 min (for < 10 ppm approx. 6 hr)
	Accuracy <sup>1)</sup> :	2 % of displayed value ±1 ppm
	Drift at 10 ppm:	< 10 % / year
	Sensor life <sup>2)</sup> :	ca. 5 years

- 1) In clean argon-atmosphere, without interfering gases like H<sub>2</sub>O or CO<sub>2</sub>  
 2) In absence of reactive gases (contact MBRAUN Service for further advice)

### 8 A.1.3 Connection

The connection for the Oxygen Sensor is made with an RJ45 (8-pole) Socket Connector. The pin layout is shown in the table below.

Pin-No.	Contact
1	Supply Ground
2	Switching ON/OFF 24 V
3	Signal Ground
4	Livebit (O2)
5	Not Connected
6	Signal 0 - +10 V
7	Supply +24 V
8	Supply Ground

**Moisture Analyzer (MB MO-SE-1)****8 A.2 Moisture Analyzer (MB MO-SE-1)**

The MB-MO-SE1 is designed to control the atmosphere of the **MBRAUN** Systems for residual moisture content. The measuring range is < 0.1 to 500 ppm. The measuring range from < 0.1 – 50 ppm is linear. Above 500 ppm it is possible to make an estimation of the moisture content of the inertgas atmosphere.

The sensor element is made of specifically printed ceramic. The sensor is coated with totally dehydrated phosphoric acid. Water molecules in the gas are absorbed at the phosphoric acid. The electric current of the sensor electrodes separate the water molecules (electrolysis) into H<sub>2</sub> and O<sub>2</sub>.

The flowing current is a directly measurement for water vapour partial pressure of the measuring gas. The primary signal is amplified and temperature compensated indicated.

**8 A.2.1 Design overview**

The moisture analyzer MB-MO-SE1 consists of the sensor element and a special electronics unit. The sensor is protected by a protective cage against mechanical damage. The sensor leads are connected to the electronics by a vacuum-tight feed-through. The electronics are contained in an airtight box mounted directly to the back of the DN40-KF flange.

Electronics and Sensor Element have been factory-calibrated with certified calibration gases; there are no user-accessible adjustment points.

**8 A.2.2 Technical Data**

<b>Mechanical</b>	Length over all:	205 mm, height 80 mm, depth 58 mm
	Sensor-part:	length 42 mm, diameter 14 mm
	Flange:	DN 40 KF
	Weight:	0.7 kg
	Electrical Supply voltage:	24 VDC ±10%
<b>Environment</b>	Ambient temperature:	+15 to +27 °C
	Pressure:	800 to 1200 mbar (Differential pressure sensor to electronics max. ≈200 mbar)
<b>Measuring</b>	Range:	<0.1 ... 500 ppm moisture
	Sensitivity:	20 mV / ppm
	Response time (0 - 90 %):	approximately 120 sec. (0 - 90 %)
	Warm-up time:	10 min (for < 10 ppm approx. 6 hr)
	Accuracy <sup>1)</sup> :	
	High precision range (<0.1 - 10 ppm):	better than 5 % of value
	Wide range (10 - 100 ppm):	better than 20 % of value
	Drift at 10 ppm	< 10% / year
	Sensor life <sup>2)</sup> :	ca. 5 years

1) without interfering gases like NH<sub>3</sub>

2) with regular maintenance

*Calibration of measurements*

### 8 A.2.3 Connection

The connection for the Moisture Sensor is made with an RJ45 (8-pole) Socket Connector. The pin layout is shown in the table below.

Pin-No.	Contact
1	Supply Ground
2	Switching ON/OFF 24 V
3	Signal Ground
4	Not Connected
5	Live bit (H <sub>2</sub> O)
6	Signal 0 - +10 V
7	Supply +24 V
8	Supply Ground

### 8 A.3 Calibration of measurements

As default, MBRAUN-measurements are calibrated before delivering.

- ! It is recommended to calibrate the measurements yearly by MBRAUN-specialists. Please, contact the service of MBRAUN.

In case of dysfunction, send the measurement unopened and complete to the service of MBRAUN.

On request, analyzers are available as return parts. Ask MBRAUN.

*See also chapter 12, Inspection and maintenance*

*Calibration of measurements*

---

<b>9.1</b>	<b>Introduction .....</b>	<b>9-2</b>
9.1.1	<i>Basic rules.....</i>	9-2
<b>9.2</b>	<b>Safe antechamber processes.....</b>	<b>9-3</b>
9.2.1	<i>Antechamber doors and antechamber atmosphere .....</i>	9-5
<b>9.3</b>	<b>Operating the vacuum pump, antechamber doors and tray .....</b>	<b>9-6</b>
9.3.1	<i>Notes about the vacuum pump .....</i>	9-6
9.3.2	<i>Notes for the door operation.....</i>	9-7
9.3.3	<i>Operating doors of the mini-antechamber.....</i>	9-8
9.3.4	<i>Operating doors on the round antechamber.....</i>	9-9
9.3.5	<i>Loading antechamber trays.....</i>	9-10
<b>9.4</b>	<b>Antechamber processes: manual operation .....</b>	<b>9-11</b>
9.4.1	<i>Loading into the box using the example mini-antechamber .....</i>	9-11
9.4.2	<i>Unloading material from the box .....</i>	9-13
9.4.3	<i>Operating the 390 antechamber.....</i>	9-15
<b>9.5</b>	<b>Antechamber processes: PLC-controlled .....</b>	<b>9-16</b>
9.5.1	<i>Overview of antechamber screens.....</i>	9-16
9.5.2	<i>Description of antechamber screens.....</i>	9-18
9.5.3	<i>Loading .....</i>	9-22
9.5.4	<i>Unloading.....</i>	9-25
<b>9.6</b>	<b>Additional equipment and functions (optional) .....</b>	<b>9-26</b>
9.6.1	<i>Additional functions .....</i>	9-26
9.6.2	<i>Additional equipment.....</i>	9-26

## Introduction

# 9 Antechamber operation

The structure and functions of the antechamber are described in Chapter 2 System components.  
See Chap. 2.4.

## 9.1 Introduction

This operating manual describes the safe handling of antechamber processes.

- *Chapter 9.3 shows the mechanical operation aspects of vacuum pump, door locking and antechamber tray.*
- *The manual operation of an antechamber process is depicted in exemplary fashion in Chap. 9.4 using the mini-antechamber (150 mm) for the understanding of the principle of an antechamber process.*
- *Chap. 9.5 shows the operation of MCS-controlled antechamber processes using the touch panel.*
- *Chap. 9.6 provides an overview of optional additional equipment and functions.*

### 9.1.1 Basic rules

The quality and degree of safety of the antechamber processes depend on adherence to the operating steps described in this operating manual and the type of process materials used.

#### **Basic rules for performing antechamber processes**

- ▶ Always ensure good ventilation of the room
- ▶ Never open the inner and outer antechamber doors at the same time

Before opening the inner antechamber door:

- ▶ Balance out the antechamber atmosphere and the inert box atmosphere: always perform the required evacuation and refilling cycles and follow the instructions for performing antechamber processes.

! Always heed the specific safety instructions in the following *Chap. 9.2*.

## 9.2 Safe antechamber processes

### Standard systems for product protection

Standard antechamber processes are designed for product protection for normal operating conditions with use of process materials in category 0 or 1 (see *Chapter 3 Safety concept and proper use*).

### Use of hazardous process materials (category IV and EX)

If processes/process materials with specific risks are used,

- that are sensitive, toxic or very flammable
- or emit in some other way (such as radioactivity)

In these cases, additional safety equipment and/or functions for antechamber processes are required.

- ▶ Follow the instructions in the basic safety chapter for the classification and evaluation of substances (Chapter 3).
- ▶ If necessary, ensure the use of the required additional equipment!
- ▶ In case of questions, please contact **MBRAUN SERVICE**.

### Antechamber processes

---



#### CAUTION

Incorrect operation of the antechamber processes can compromise the health of the operator. The oxygen of the ambient air can damage process material.

- ▶ Always follow the instructions in this operating manual
  - ▶ If necessary, use additional safety equipment and functions and personal protective equipment (PPE)
  - ▶ If necessary, follow your operation-specific standard flow plan
-

## Safe antechamber processes

### Transport containers



#### WARNING

Risk of explosion or implosion from transport containers that are not vacuum-suitable.  
Depending on the process materials used, there can be additional risks for people.

- ▶ With transport containers with gas-like or liquid content (e.g. bottles and containers): note that they must stand up to the pressure changes during evacuation/refilling of the antechamber
- ▶ Do not refill fluids below their vapour pressure at the reigning temperature.
- ▶ If necessary, use vacuum-suitable transport containers.

---

#### NOTICE

---

Ambient air trapped in transport containers causes contamination of the box atmosphere.

There can be damage to process materials, which depending on the type of materials can cause unexpected risks.

- ▶ Open closed containers (boxes, bottles, etc.) – insofar as possible – before loading
  - ▶ Always provide transport containers with required stickers and warning labels.
-

## 9.2.1 Antechamber doors and antechamber atmosphere

### 9.2.1.1 Loading

#### **NOTICE**

Oxygen and moisture in the ambient air contaminate the box atmosphere and can trigger unexpected reactions and do damage to process materials. Measurement instruments can be damaged.

- ▶ Adhere to on-site conditions
- ▶ Never open the inner and outer antechamber doors at the same time
- ▶ Never open the inner antechamber door if the antechamber is filled with ambient air.

Before opening the antechamber inner door:

- ▶ Always match the antechamber atmosphere to the highly-pure atmosphere in the box through several cycles of evacuation/refilling of the antechamber with working gas.
- 

### 9.2.1.2 Unloading

#### **Unloading cycle in standard systems:**

After closing the inner antechamber door, the outer antechamber door can be opened. The inert box atmosphere that has penetrated the mini- and round antechambers may escape into the room (see section 9.4.2).

**Please note: Only allowed with the use of non-toxic gases and process materials! (See Chap. 3 Safety).**

### 9.2.1.3 After completing an antechamber process



#### **WARNING**

Health hazard and/or risk to process materials in case of open antechamber doors.

After completing an antechamber process:

- ▶ Always make sure that the outer and inner door of the antechamber are closed.
-

## Operating the vacuum pump, antechamber doors and tray

### 9.3 Operating the vacuum pump, antechamber doors and tray

Before the operation of the antechamber processes is described, this section provides an overview of prerequisites for operation of the vacuum antechamber, the antechamber doors and the antechamber tray.

#### 9.3.1 Notes about the vacuum pump

##### Exhaust / exhaust air

**MBRAUN** recommends connecting the exhaust system of the vacuum pump to an in-house exhaust system.

##### Switching on/off

Before starting the antechamber processes

- Switch on the vacuum pump

##### System with a single vacuum pump (VPG)

The vacuum pump is used primarily for box pressure regulation, as a second priority for refilling processes of the antechamber (*cf. Section 9.5 MCS-controlled antechamber processes*).

In case of very frequent antechamber processes, **MBRAUN** recommends using a separate vacuum pump for antechamber processes.

##### System with a separate vacuum pump for antechamber processes (VP)

If the vacuum pump is no longer needed:

- Switch off vacuum pump on the touch panel → The pump is switched on again automatically for the next evacuation/refill cycle.

##### ECO-Mode (optional)

in ECO-Mode the vacuum pump is switched down at a defined point in time. See *special chapter 6 A (optional)*.

*Operating the vacuum pump, antechamber doors and tray*

### 9.3.2 Notes for the door operation

**Damage to the antechamber door in case of incorrect operation**

An evacuated antechamber under vacuum cannot be opened. With an attempt to open an evacuated antechamber, the door locking mechanism can be damaged.

**Door seals**

Dirt, solvents and foreign bodies can damage the door seals and door mechanism.

Make sure that the door and the door seals are free of dirt and objects before you close the antechamber door.

Check the seals regularly to make sure they are tight

**Risk of crushing in case of improper operation**

Keep your hands away from the antechamber door area.

## Operating the vacuum pump, antechamber doors and tray

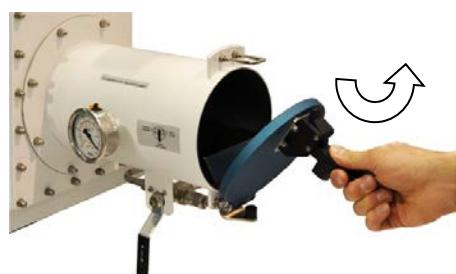
### 9.3.3 Operating doors of the mini-antechamber

The mini-antechamber is equipped with a manually-activated lever locking mechanism.



Closed outer door:

- > Lever is locked in the bracket



Opening the outer door:

To open:

- Lift lever and pull out of the bracket
- Unfold cover

To close:

- Place the lever in the bracket and lock



Closed inner door

- > Lever is locked in the bracket



Opening the inner door

- Open and close as above.

*Operating the vacuum pump, antechamber doors and tray***9.3.4 Operating doors on the round antechamber**

The door on the round antechamber is equipped with a gas pressure spring for lifting and lowering the antechamber door.

***NOTICE***

Material damage in case of improper handling!

- ▶ Perform the swivel movement of the doors for lifting/lower the doors without force
- ▶ Do not overload the lifting mechanism

**To open:****Prerequisite**

- > Room is ventilated
- > Antechamber is not under pressure
- > Antechamber atmosphere is not contaminated
- > Inner antechamber door is closed
- ▶ Turn rotary lock anti-clockwise until the door is completely unlocked.
- ▶ Carefully swivel the antechamber door upwards:  
⇒ The antechamber bracket holds the door in the open position.

**To close:**

- ▶ Lower the door and position in front of the antechamber entrance.

**Note**

Activate rotary lock carefully. A too-strong overturning of the lock can damage the seals on the antechamber door.

- ▶ Turn the rotary lock clockwise until the door is locked.

*Operating the vacuum pump, antechamber doors and tray***9.3.5 Loading antechamber trays****Prerequisites**

Loading:	> Inner door is closed	► Open outer door
----------	------------------------	-------------------

Unloading:	> Outer door is closed	► Open inner door
------------	------------------------	-------------------

**Material preparation**

- Make sure that the packaging/containers are vacuum-suitable
- If necessary, place material in vacuum-suitable containers that can be sealed
- Open closed containers (boxes, bottles, etc.) – insofar as possible – before loading

**Loading**

- |                          |  |
|--------------------------|--|
| If no tray is available: | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>► Bring the material directly into the antechamber</li> <li>► Make sure that no foreign bodies prevent the closing of the antechamber door</li> </ul> |
|--------------------------|--|

*Loading:*

- Close the outer door of the antechamber.

*Unloading:*

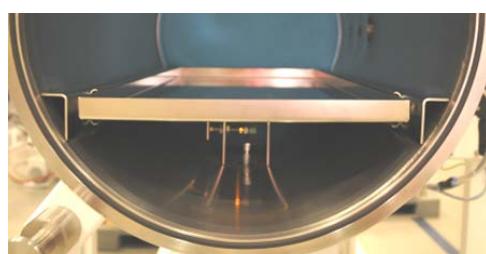
- Close the inner door of the antechamber.
- Start the antechamber process (see below)

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| If a tray is available: procedure as before and: | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>► remove tray, place material on it, then push tray plus material into the antechamber.</li> </ul> |
|--|---|

*Optional for pneumatic doors:*

*Sensor below the tray is activated if the tray is pushed into the starting position → Door mechanism is released*

*Heed the activation light.*

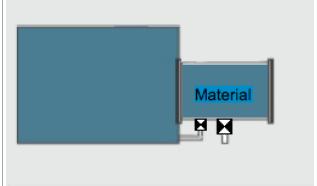
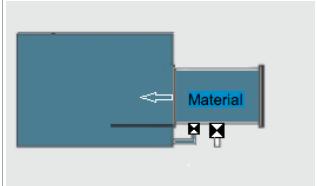
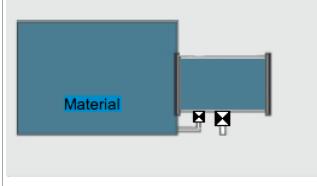


## 9.4 Antechamber processes: manual operation

### 9.4.1 Loading into the box using the example mini-antechamber

Step	Status of doors	Status of atmosphere	Status antechamber pressure	Status manual valve	► Action	Fig Mini-antechamber
1	Inside CLOSE D Outside OPEN		Atm	CLOSED	- Unlock cover - Open cover.	
2	Inside CLOSE D Outside OPEN		Atm	CLOSED	- Pull out tray - Place material on tray + - insert into the antechamber	
3	Inside CLOSE D Outside OPEN		Atm	CLOSED	Locking the outer door: - Close cover. - Lock cover.	
4	Inside CLOSE D outside CLOSE D		Vacuum-0.9 to -1.0 bar	EVAK	Evacuation	
5	Inside CLOSE D outside CLOSE D		Intermediate refilling ≤-0.4 bar	Refill	Refilling from the box optional:from external gas source	

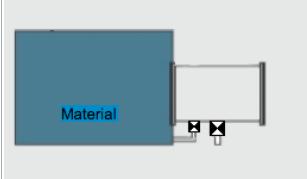
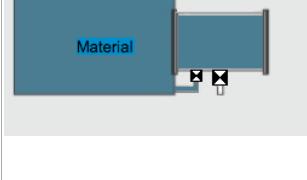
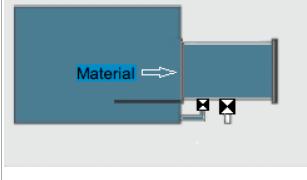
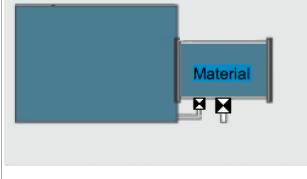
## Antechamber processes: manual operation

Step	Status of doors	Status of atmosphere	Status antechamber pressure	Status manual valve	► Action	Fig Mini-antechamber
6	Inside CLOSE D outside CLOSE D		Change vacuum / refill end: = Box pressure		Evacuate / refill  Repeat multiple times until the antechamber is inert 150 miniantechamber: 2x 390 main antechamber: 3x	
7	Inside CLOSE D outside CLOSE D		= Box pressure	 CLOSED	Close valve	
8	Inside OPEN Outsid e CLOSE D		= Box pressure	 CLOSED	- Unlock inner door - Open inner door - Insert material from the antechamber into the box - Close inner door	
9	Inside CLOSE D outside CLOSE D		= Box pressure	 CLOSED	./. The material is loaded	

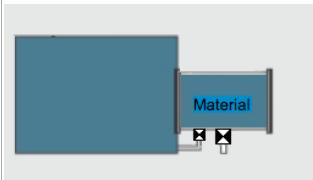
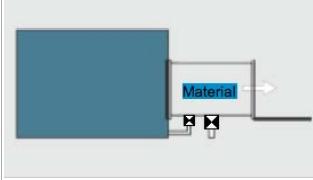
## Antechamber processes: manual operation

## 9.4.2 Unloading material from the box

! If the outer antechamber door was open, the inner walls may be moist. To prevent this, **MBRAUN** recommends performing an evacuation and refilling procedure after opening the outer antechamber door.

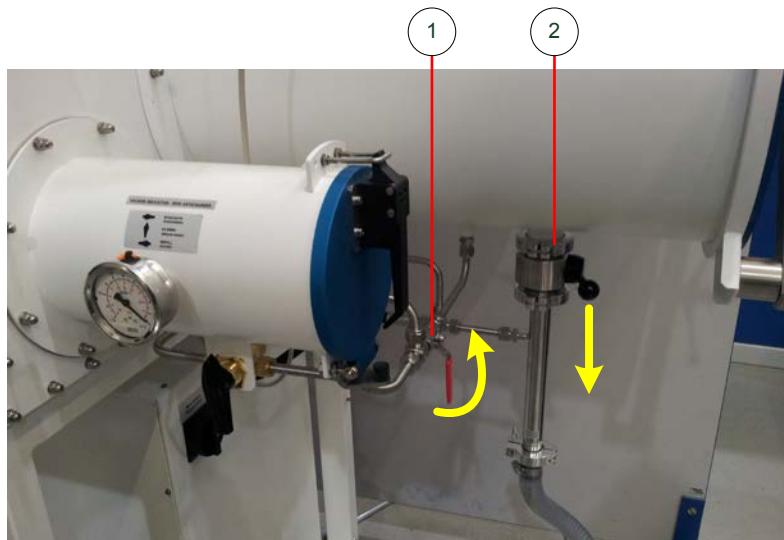
Step	Status of doors	Status of atmosphere	Status antechamber pressure	Status manual valve	Action	Example of mini-antechamber
1	Inside CLOSED Outside door CLOSED		check whether = Box pressure	 CLOSED	Check: is the antechamber inert? – No → step 2 Yes → step 3	
(2)	Inside CLOSED Outside door CLOSED		Vacuum / Box pressure final: = Box pressure	 Mini: 2x390: 3x	Evacuate / refill  Repeat several times until the antechamber atmosphere matches the box atmosphere (it is inert)	
3	Outer door CLOSED Inner door CLOSED		= Box pressure	 CLOSED	- / - The antechamber is inert:  - Open inner door	
4	Outer door CLOSED Inner door OPEN		= Box pressure	 CLOSED	- Place material in the antechamber - Close inner door	
5	Inner door CLOSED Outer door CLOSED		= Box pressure	 CLOSED	Optional: Perform step (6) –  Standard: continue with step 7	

## Antechamber processes: manual operation

Step	Status of doors	Status of atmosphere	Status antechamber pressure	Status manual valve	Action	Example of mini-antechamber
(6)	Inside <b>CLOSED</b> Outside door <b>CLOSED</b>	<p><b>Optional:</b></p>  <p><b>Optional:</b> Refill with ambient air</p>	= Box pressure	 CLOSED	<p><i>if necessary, evacuate/refill with ambient air</i> </p> <p>End: = atmosphere pressure</p>	
7	Inner door <b>CLOSED</b> Outer door <b>CLOSED</b>	 <p><b>Standard</b></p>	= Atm.pressure		- Open outer door	
8	Inner door <b>CLOSED</b> Outer door <b>OPEN</b>		= Atm.pressure	 CLOSED	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Remove material from the antechamber</li> <li>- Close outer antechamber door</li> </ul>	

### 9.4.3 Operating the 390 antechamber

The standard equipment of a UNILab is a 390 antechamber with hand valves. Operation of the evacuation and refilling cycles as in Chapter 9.4.



Nr.	Designation
(1)	Refill valve
(2)	Evacuation valve

! Do not open the evacuation and refill valves simultaneously. The cycle described above must be adhered to.

The simultaneous operation of the mini-antechamber and the large antechamber must be avoided.

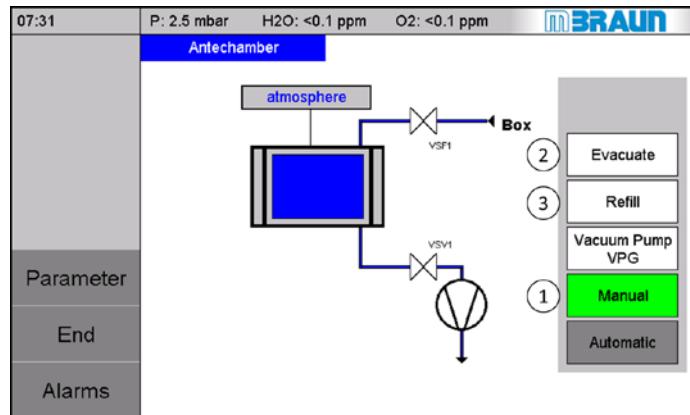
## Antechamber processes: PLC-controlled

## 9.5 Antechamber processes: PLC-controlled

## 9.5.1 Overview of antechamber screens

Antechamber screen

01601-1



*Example: antechamber in manual operation*

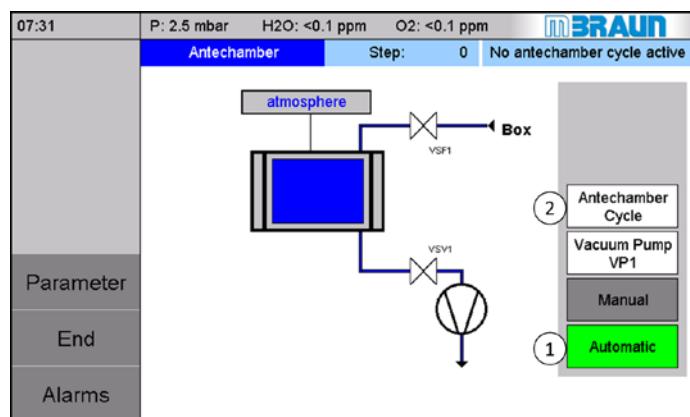
- (1) Manual operation with functions
- (2) Evacuation
- (3) Refill

Antechamber screen

01601-2

*Optional:*

- (1) Automatic operation with
- (2) Antechamber cycle function



## Antechamber processes: PLC-controlled

Parameter Antechamber screen

01600-1

07:31	P: 2.5 mbar H <sub>2</sub> O: <0.1 ppm O <sub>2</sub> : <0.1 ppm	<b>Antechamber Parameter</b>	IN-BRAUN
	Intermediate refilling level	400	mbar
	Setpoint vacuum leaktest	0.5	mbar
	Setpoint endvacuum	0.1	mbar
	Pumping / refilling cycles	1	
	Max. evacuation time	5	min
	Max. leakrate	3	steps
Back			
End			
Alarms			

After touching the button

**Parameter**

Parameter adjustments for automatic operation of a vacuum antechamber

Parameter Antechamber screen

01600-1

07:31	P: 2.5 mbar H <sub>2</sub> O: <0.1 ppm O <sub>2</sub> : <0.1 ppm	<b>Antechamber Parameter</b>	IN-BRAUN
	Cycles	1	
	Time Evacuation	5	sec
	Time Refilling	3	sec
	Time Fill to atmosphere	60	sec
Back			
End			
Alarms			

After touching the button

**Parameter**

Parameter adjustments for automatic operation of a time controlled antechamber

## Antechamber processes: PLC-controlled

## 9.5.2 Description of antechamber screens

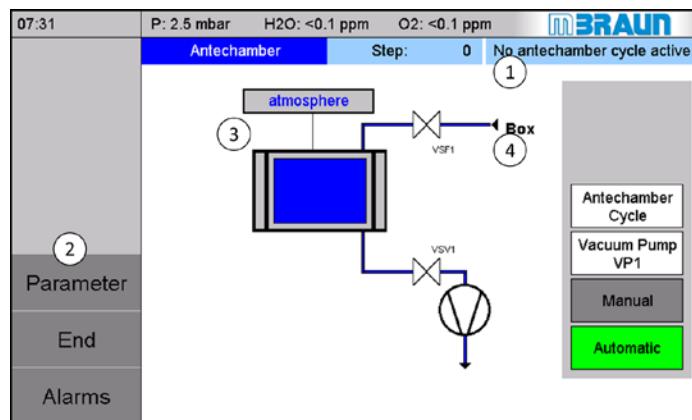
## 9.5.2.1 Antechamber screen

The antechamber screen indicates the status of the antechamber processes.

The antechamber processes are activated and deactivated with the function keys

Antechamber screen

01601-2



*Example: automatic operation (optional)*

- (1) Status line
- (2) Navigation buttons
- (3) Display pictogram
- (4) Functions field

Antechamber      Step: 0      No antechamber cycle activ

(1) Status line

(2) Navigation

Parameter
End

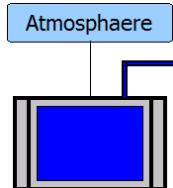
Button calls up the "Parameter" screen (see  
9.5.2.2)  
back to the "Start screen"

## Antechamber processes: PLC-controlled

The pressure of the automatic antechamber is measured with pressure sensors.

(3) Pictograms:pressure indicator

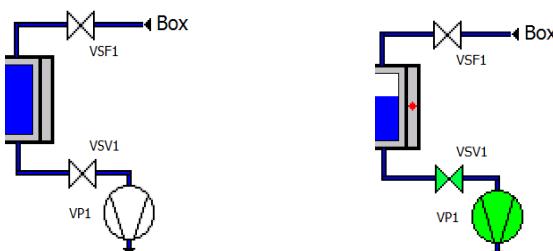
The current value (in mbar or "atmosphere") is displayed in the light blue field:



The antechamber pressure is displayed graphically as a blue bar: the lower the pressure in the antechamber, the lower the bar height.

Note:

If the system is equipped with just one manometer, no values appear on the touch panel



The antechamber processes are activated / deactivated with the function keys.

Cont. (3)

Status indicator

- Valves (input/output)
- Vacuum pump

(4) Function keys field / Antechambers status indicator

**Evacuation** In manual operation: evacuation of the antechamber function

**Refill** In manual operation: refilling of the antechamber function

**Antechamber cycle** In automatic operation:Antechamber cycle function: Automatic flow of the evacuate/refill cycle

**Hand operation** Change between the modes manual operation and automatic operation  
In manual operation: release of the evacuate – refill keys In automatic operation:  
release of the "Antechamber cycle" key

**Automatic**

**Vacuum pump** Vacuum pump  
**VPG** Here: vacuum pump gas purifier  
Optional: additional pump VP

## Antechamber processes: PLC-controlled

## 9.5.2.2 Antechamber parameters

Parameter Antechamber		01600-1
07:31	P: 2.5 mbar H2O: <0.1 ppm O2: <0.1 ppm Antechamber Parameter	Automatic antechamber parameters of a vacuum antechamber

Intermediate refilling level      400 mbar  
Setpoint vacuum leaktest      0.5 mbar  
Setpoint endvacuum      0.1 mbar  
Pumping / refilling cycles      1 min  
Max. evacuation time      5 min  
Max. leakrate      3 steps

Back  
End  
Alarms

The parameters are pre-set by **MBRAUN** and can be adapted if necessary.

## Parameters for the antechamber cycle evacuate + refill of vacuum antechamber

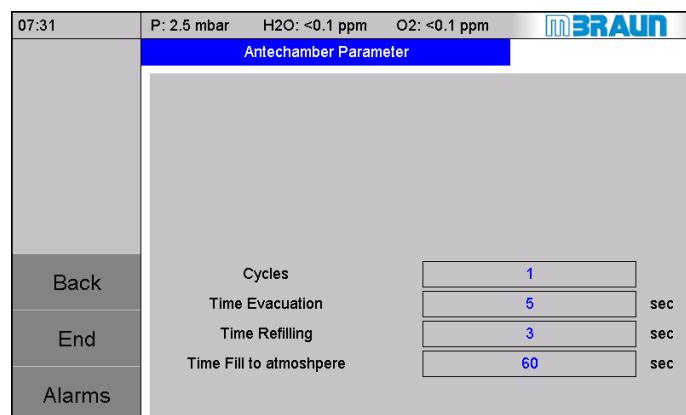
Description	MBRAUN setting	Unit	min	max	Customer setting
<b>Threshold value intermediate refill</b> Value for the pressure up to which the antechamber is filled between two evacuation steps.	400	mbar	50	1000	
<b>Threshold value vacuum leak test</b> Target value for the vacuum leak test.	5x10-1	mbar	1x10-2	10	
<b>Threshold value final vacuum</b> Target value for the pressure at which the evacuation ends.	5x10-1	mbar	1x10-2	10	
<b>Number of pump refill cycles</b> Number of pump evacuation/refill cycles	1		1	10	
<b>Maximum evacuation time [min]</b> Period in which the value for "Threshold value vacuum leak test" must be reached. In case of error, the cycle is stopped and the message "Time exceeded" appears.	5	min	1	20	
<b>Maximum leakage rate [steps]</b> Value for the maximum permissible pressure increase during the two steps of the vacuum leak tightness test in a defined time period.	3		1	10	

## Antechamber processes: PLC-controlled

Description	MBRAUN setting	Unit			Customer setting	min	max
			min	max	Customer setting	min	max
Example: 2x10^-1 mbar to 4x10^-1 mbar If the parameter value is reached, the process is stopped and the message "Antechamber leaks" is displayed.							

Parameter Antechamber screen

01600-1



Automatic antechamber parameters of a time controlled antechamber

## Parameters for the antechamber cycle evacuate + refill of a time controlled

Description	MBRAUN setting	Unit			Customer setting		
			min	max	Customer setting	min	max
<b>Cycles</b> Number of full antechamber cycles	1		1	10			
<b>Time Evacuation</b> Time of evacuation	300	Sec	10	1000			
<b>Time refilling</b> Refill time for intermediate refilling	45	Sec	0	300			
<b>Time fill to atmosphere</b> Refill time after the last evacuation cycle	120	Sec	30	600			

## Antechamber processes: PLC-controlled

## 9.5.3 Loading

## 9.5.3.1 Preparations

The antechamber atmosphere is prepared for the loading and unloading of materials through evacuation and refilling with inert gas and ambient air. Parameters are set for the MCS-controlled processes (see above). The processes are activated on the touch panel

## 9.5.3.2 Manual operation: evacuation and refilling

The antechamber functions "evacuation" and "refilling" are started and stopped manually with a button on the touch panel.



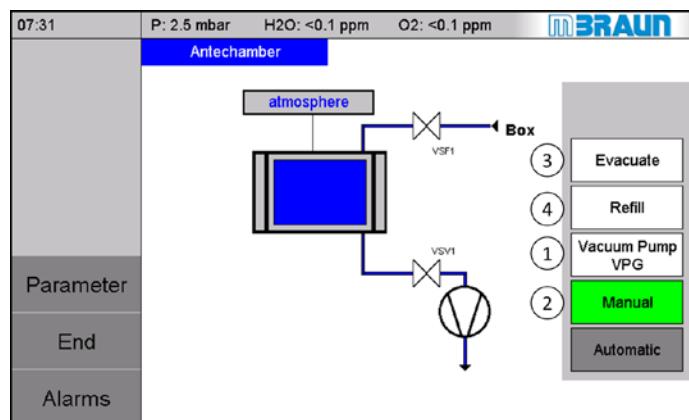
The antechamber pressure is displayed on the manometer on the antechamber. During the evacuation and refilling process:

- Read antechamber pressure

End pressure refilling: 200-400 mbar  
evacuation: < 1 mbar End pressure: Box pressure

Antechamber screen - manual operation

01601-1



## Status:

Manual operation switched on:

- The **Evacuate** and **Refill** buttons are released
- Automatic mode is inactive

**Antechamber processes: PLC-controlled****Prerequisite**

Antechamber doors	> Both antechamber doors are closed
(1)	<p>The vacuum pump is switched on automatically at the evacuation start.</p> <p>With an additional vacuum pump:</p> <p>Switch on if necessary: on the Functions or Antechamber screen</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Press the <b>Vacuum Pump VP1</b> button</li> </ul>
(2)	<p><b>Activate "manual operation" operating mode</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Press the <b>Manual</b> button</li> </ul> <p>The colour of the button changes from GREY to GREEN</p> <p>The Evacuate and Refill buttons are released</p>

**Evacuation and refilling cycle:**

(3)	<b>To evacuate:</b>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Press the <b>Evacuate</b> button</li> <li>▶ Evacuate until antechamber pressure &lt; 1 mbar</li> </ul>
(4)	<b>To refill:</b>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Press the <b>Refill</b> button</li> <li>▶ Intermediate refilling up to antechamber pressure 200 .. 400 mbar</li> </ul>
Repeat 3 x:	Evacuate cycle -- execute refilling 3 x
Then:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Refill up to box pressure</li> <li>▶ Close the refill valve: press the <b>Refill</b> button again</li> </ul>

**Door operation after evacuation -- refilling**

After completing the evacuation and refill process and reaching the target pressure, one door apiece (inside or outside) can be opened.

<b>When loading:</b>	> Reaching of the box pressure:	▶ Open inner door
<b>When unloading</b>	> Atmosphere pressure:	▶ Open outer door

**Please note:**

The refilling of the antechamber in manual operation is limited to 10 minutes; after that, the function switches off automatically.

- the "Refill" function can be switched on again
- the "Automatic operation" function can be switched on

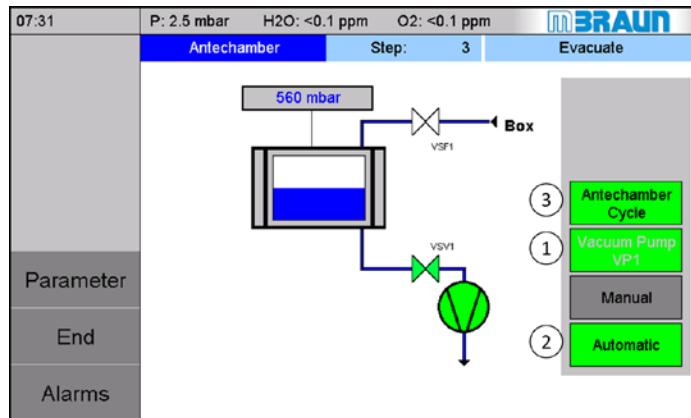
## Antechamber processes: PLC-controlled

## 9.5.3.3 Automatic antechamber cycle (Option)

The automatic antechamber cycle with evacuation and refilling is defined by the parameters.

## Antechamber – automatic operation

01601-3



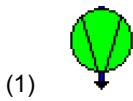
Status: automatic operation switched on

- The pre-set number of evacuation and refilling cycles is run through automatically.
- The vacuum pump is activated and cannot be switched off

## Prerequisite

## Antechamber doors

- > Both antechamber doors are closed



The vacuum pump is switched on automatically at the start of the antechamber cycle.

With an additional vacuum pump:

Switch on if necessary: on the Functions or Antechamber screen

- Press the **Vacuum Pump VP1** button

(2)

## Activating "automatic" operating mode



- Press the **Automatic** button

→ The colour of the button changes from GREY to GREEN

Thus the "**Antechamber cycle**" button is enabled

## Automatic antechamber cycle:



## Start of the automatic antechamber cycle:

- Press the **Antechamber Cycle** button

The antechamber runs through the parametrized evacuation and refill cycles with subsequent pressure equalization with the box.

## ! Pressure disturbances

In case of disturbances in the box pressure or the antechamber pressure, please heed *Chapter 11 Eliminating faults*.

### 9.5.4 Unloading

#### Flow unloading of material

1	Antechamber doors	> Both antechamber doors are closed
2	Antechamber atmosphere	> The antechamber is filled with inert gas > Antechamber pressure and box pressure are the same
3	Inner antechamber door	> The antechamber door is released / can be opened
4	Loading antechambers	► Load the antechamber from the box with material
5	Inner antechamber door	► Close the inner antechamber door
6	Antechamber atmosphere	In case of contaminated box atmosphere: ► Evacuate antechamber / refill (manual operation or automatic - see above)  → End pressure: atmosphere
7	Outer antechamber door	→ The antechamber door is released / can be opened
8	Antechamber loading	► Remove material from the antechamber from the outside ► If necessary, reload
9	Outer antechamber door	► Close

*Additional equipment and functions (optional)***9.6 Additional equipment and functions (optional)****9.6.1 Additional functions**

Equipment	Function	see Chap.
Refill the antechamber with inert gas from external source*)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ To speed up antechamber processes: for large antechambers, whose inner volume is not a lot smaller than that of an inert gas box.</li> <li>▪ If the antechamber should not be flooded with contaminated box atmosphere (e.g. in case of the use of solvents or special gases in the box).</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>*) This always requires an additional safety pressure control valve on the antechamber!</p>	9 A ff
Purging of the antechamber in over pressure (= purge antechamber)	Inertising of the antechamber for use of vacuum-sensitive materials	9 A ff

**9.6.2 Additional equipment**

Equipment	Function	see Chap.
T-antechamber	Transfers of process materials in multi-box operation (box to box; box-outside)	9 A ff
Antechamber oven	Heating up of process materials under vacuum	10 A ff

---

<b>10.1 Safety .....</b>	<b>10-2</b>
<b>10.2 MBRAUN additional equipment .....</b>	<b>10-3</b>
10.2.1 Additional equipment box.....	10-3
10.2.2 Additional equipment antechamber.....	10-6
<b>10.3 Customer-specific components.....</b>	<b>10-7</b>
<b>10.4 Other manufacturers' components.....</b>	<b>10-7</b>

## Safety

# 10 Additional equipment (optional)

Additional equipment can be integrated into a **MBRAUN** standard system:

- **MBRAUN** additional components
- Other manufacturers' additional components
- Customer-specific components

These can be used to create solutions for customer-specific processes.

## 10.1 Safety

### Proper Use / Misuse

Proper use / misuse are described in the specific additional chapters. Please follow the instructions there.

### Emergency OFF

If components are integrated into the **MBRAUN** system and equipped with an EMERGENCY OFF switch, please follow the note below:



#### DANGER

Personal injury and environmental damage due to incorrect operation!

**EMERGENCY OFF** buttons which are on third-party components only switch off the respective component!

- ▶ In case of danger, switch off the main switch on the system's control cabinet!

## 10.2 MBRAUN additional equipment

### 10.2.1 Additional equipment box

Designation	Function	Separate document item Nr.	See
Box atmosphere:			
 Particle absorber (various service areas)	<i>Suctioning of particles from processing in the box</i>	misc.	Chap. 10
Differential pressure sensor	<i>Monitoring of the degree of saturation of the particle filter</i>	Equipment of third-party suppliers-	Chap. 14
 UGP	<i>Universal measurement device for various gases/solvent vapours</i>	2605008	Chap. 10
 GSU	<i>Determination of a specific gas mixture (H2O/ O2)</i>	2604856	Chap. 10
 Oxygen sensors	<i>Monitoring of oxygen content in the box atmosphere (ppm and % range)</i>		Annex and Chap. 13
 Moisture sensor	<i>Monitoring of the moisture content in the box and antechamber atmosphere</i>		Annex and Chap. 13

*MBRAUN additional equipment*

Use of solvents			
	<p><i>Removing solvents</i>            Regulate LMF normally / internally for gas purification or            Regulate LMF with hand valves externally for gas purification for retrofitting in the frame of the box</p>		<i>Chap. 10 A ff</i>
Regulating LMF externally			
Box temperature			
	<i>Cooling of the box atmosphere</i>	2605006	<i>Chap. 10 A ff and Chap. 15</i>
Box cooling RKI 80-200-300			
Handling process materials			
	<i>Cooling of process materials</i>		<i>Chap. 10 A ff.</i>
Refrigerator			
	<i>Cooling of process materials</i>		<i>Chap. 10 A ff.</i>
Cold Well			

	<i>Drying of process materials in a vacuum</i>	<i>Equipment of third-party suppliers-</i>	<i>Chap. 15</i>
Vacuum-drying cabinet VC20	<b>Cooling of additional equipment</b>		
	<i>Cooling of process heat / additional equipment in the box</i>	2604760	
<b>Shelves in the box</b>			
	<i>Storage areas for process materials</i>		
<b>Additional equipment for processes in the box</b>			
	<i>Coating processes semi-conductor - (spinning)</i>	2605001	<i>other see Chap. 10</i>
Spincoater MB-SC-200			
	<i>Box protective equipment</i>		
Over pressure safety valve MB-OSV	<i>Securing of the box pressure; tear securing of the gloves</i>		
Light curtain	<i>Reach-in guard against moving parts in the box</i>	<i>Third party equipment</i>	
UV protection pane	<i>Protection against UV radiation</i>		

***MBRAUN additional equipment*****10.2.2 Additional equipment antechamber**

Designation	Function	Separate document item Nr.	See
Antechamber types			
T-antechamber	In multi-box systems: Transfer processes between 2 boxes or between box and outside environment		<i>Chap. 9 A ff.</i>
Oven antechamber 250°C stand-alone	Heating up of process materials under vacuum		<i>Chap. 9 A ff.</i>
Heatable mini-antechamber	Heating up of process materials under vacuum		<i>Chap. 10 A ff.</i>
Oven antechamber VOH-600	Heating up of process materials under vacuum up to 600°C		<i>Chap. 10 A ff</i>
Functions			
Purge antechamber	Transfers of vacuum-sensitive materials; Purging of the antechamber with inert gas / ambient air in over pressure		<i>Chap. 9 A ff.</i>

### 10.3 Customer-specific components

**MBRAUN** can integrate customer-specific components in inert gas systems. This way, customer-specific processes, special controller functions and safety requirements can be set up.

Special requirements and customer requests can be planned and implemented in consultation with the **MBRAUN** Service Department.

**!** **For the integration of customer-specific components/process systems into a standard inert gas system:**

The responsibility for the safe handling of customer-specific processes lies with the customer, including the documentation and training of personnel.

### 10.4 Other manufacturers' components

**MBRAUN** inert gas systems can be equipped with components from third-party manufacturers, for example:

- Vacuum pump(s)
- Compressor(s) for system cooling
- Compressor(s) for freezers

The original supplier documentation is a component of the scope of delivery. See *Chap. 14 Supplier documentation*

**MBRAUN** assumes no liability for the content of the documentation of third-party manufacturers.

*Other manufacturers' components*

---

<b>11.1</b>	<b>Eliminating faults (general/mechanical) .....</b>	<b>11-2</b>
11.1.1	<i>MCU.....</i>	11-2
11.1.2	<i>Gas purifier.....</i>	11-2
11.1.3	<i>Box.....</i>	11-2
11.1.4	<i>Antechambers.....</i>	11-4
<b>11.2</b>	<b>Opto-acoustic alarm (optional) .....</b>	<b>11-5</b>
<b>11.3</b>	<b>Acknowledge/delete warning messages (MCU).....</b>	<b>11-6</b>
<b>11.4</b>	<b>Definition of the alarm and warning messages (MCU) .....</b>	<b>11-7</b>
<b>11.5</b>	<b>Recommissioning after cancellation and power failure .....</b>	<b>11-17</b>
11.5.1	<i>Normal flow regeneration .....</i>	11-17
11.5.2	<i>Regeneration of the gas purifier RKM .....</i>	11-17
11.5.3	<i>Regeneration of the gas purifier LMF.....</i>	11-18
<b>11.6</b>	<b>Error search: leak test .....</b>	<b>11-18</b>

*Eliminating faults (general/mechanical)***11 Trouble shooting****11.1 Eliminating faults (general/mechanical)****11.1.1 MCU**

Fault	Remedy	See Chap.
Start screen does not appear after switching on:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Check communication Panel + MCU + establish</li> <li>▶ Check connector and electrical supply</li> </ul> <p>Fault not eliminated:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Contact <b>MBRAUN</b> Service</li> </ul>	

**11.1.2 Gas purifier**

Fault	Remedy	See Chap.
<i>See Error messages 11.4</i>	<i>See Error messages 11.4</i>	<i>Chap. 12</i>

**11.1.3 Box**

Fault	Remedy	See Chap.
O2 and H2O values decline	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Regeneration of the reactors necessary or switch over to the second reactor (if available)</li> <li>▶ Perform leak test</li> </ul>	7.3.2
The O2 measurement value sinks very slowly to values below 10 ppm, although a greater purity of the box atmosphere must be assumed	<p>Before an error in the measurement device is assumed:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Check systems for disturbing influences: e.g. influences due to hydrogen or other gas components in the inert gas atmosphere, which cause increased indications.</li> <li>▶ In case of a fault, send the device unopened and complete to <b>MBRAUN</b> Service.</li> </ul>	see 12.5.1.2  See separate documentation MB-OX-SE1

*Eliminating faults (general/mechanical)*

Fault	Remedy	See Chap.
Imprecise measurement values of the sensors	Heed the duration until sensors work correctly: - O <sub>2</sub> sensors: after exposure to air several hours -H <sub>2</sub> O sensors up to 24 hours.	See appendix, documentation MB-OX-SE1 + MB-MO-SE1
Pressure drop / pressure increase		
O <sub>2</sub> / H <sub>2</sub> O increase		
Temperature increase / drop		
Glove tear *)	Securing with gloveport covers; eliminate cause; Perform glove change	Chap. 12.5.2
Inert gas / process material escapes into the environment	Leak	
Contamination of the box chemicals / dust ...	Clean box mechanically;	
Electrical faults / power failure		

**\*) Glove change in case of error - in case of leaky gloves and critical processes:**

1. In case of mechanical damage: initial securing with outer gloveport cover:  
*(NOTICE: Leave 1 feedthrough open!) - See Chap 12.*
2. In case of pressure increase / drop: Eliminate cause - Take safety measures

If a quick glove change is required – (in order to prevent a contamination of the box or if hazardous materials should not get into the ambient air):

**MBRAUN** recommends the application of the glove change without gloveport cover method –

- Please follow the instructions in *Chap. 12.*

**NOTICE**

After an error, processes/process materials can be damaged!

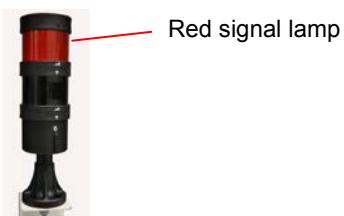
- Proper disposal of unusable materials and defective gloves is the responsibility of the customer.

*Eliminating faults (general/mechanical)*

## 11.1.4 Antechambers

Event	Action	See Chap.
Power failure	For MCU-controlled antechambers:	
Unexpected pressure increase/drop	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Check connections operating gas / purge gas / vacuum pump</li> <li>▶ Check magnetic valves</li> <li>▶ Check seals</li> <li>▶ Leak test</li> </ul>	
Antechamber door mechanism blocked	<p>Do not use force to open! Risk of damaging the locking mechanism!</p> <p>In case of door locking:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ check on the panel: is the door locking released?</li> </ul> <p>Vacuum in the antechamber?</p> <p>Lift vacuum:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ loosen screws on the flange below the antechamber</li> </ul>	

## 11.2 Opto-acoustic alarm (optional)



Every warning is indicated by an optical (and acoustic) signal:

Status	Description
Red light ON	Alarm / Warning has arrived
Red light OFF	All alarms / warnings are acknowledged

Switch off alarm: description in the following section:

## Acknowledge/delete warning messages (MCU)

## 11.3 Acknowledge/delete warning messages (MCU)

**Alarme**

With red blinking ALARM button:

Touch button → calls up the "Report level" screen:

07:31	P: 2.5 mbar	H2O: <0.1 ppm	O2: <0.1 ppm	<b>IN BRAUN</b>
Warning Screen				
No.	Time	Text		<b>ACK</b>
108	15:43:54	purifier: O2 alarm		
Back				
End				
History				

**Report level**

- Confirm alarm with the **ACK** button:

**Historie**

► Touch of the "History" button calls up the "Report level history" screen

07:31	P: 2.5 mbar	H2O: <0.1 ppm	O2: <0.1 ppm	<b>IN BRAUN</b>
Warning History				
No.	Time	Date	Status	Text
106	15:43:54	28.11.2013	K	purifier: H2O alarm
108	15:39:46	28.11.2013	(K)G	purifier: O2 alarm
215	15:32:25	28.11.2013	K	box cooling: temperature too high
Back				
End				
Alarms		UP	DOWN	

**History warnings**

Status:

K      Warning message arrived

(K) G      Warning message sent

**Deleting alarm and warning messages:**

After eliminating the fault, delete the message in question:

Touch message: message is marked.

Touch **ACK** button: the selected message is deleted.

*Definition of the alarm and warning messages (MCU)***11.4      Definition of the alarm and warning messages (MCU)**

Nr.	Description	Possible causes of faults	Solutions	How to eliminate / see Chapter
2	Motor guard vacuum pump VPG 1 has triggered	Vacuum pump defective Large leak in the vacuum tubing (vacuum pump is too heavily loaded by large leak)	Replace vacuum pump Eliminate large leak in the tubing Vacuum pump test	Test by MBRAUN Service
3	Circulation blower GB1 motor guard has triggered or fault in frequency converter.	Blower defective Stopping up of the filter / - blower tubing (therefore blower runs hot)	Replace blower Eliminate the stopping up of the blower tubing Blower test	Test by MBRAUN Service
4	Gas purifier: reactor 1 main valves not open	Main valve defective Control pressure too low	Replace main valve Set control pressure to 6 bar	
5	Gas purifier: reactor 1 main valves not closed	Main valve defective	Replace main valve Set control pressure to 6 bar	
6	Gas purifier: reactor 2 main valves not open	Main valve defective Control pressure too low	Replace main valve Set control pressure to 6 bar	
7	Gas purifier: reactor 2 main valves not closed	Main valve defective Control pressure too low	Replace main valve Set control pressure to 6 bar	
8	Gas purifier: no operating gas or pressure too low	Pressure monitor for operating gas set incorrectly or defective	Set operating gas pressure to 6 bar Set pressure monitor (approx. 5.5 bar) Replace pressure monitor	
9	Gas purifier: purge gas pressure too low	Pressure of purge gas too low Pressure monitor for purge gas set incorrectly or defective	Set purge gas to 6 bar Set pressure monitor (approx. 5.5 bar) Replace pressure monitor	

*Definition of the alarm and warning messages (MCU)*

Nr.	Description	Possible causes of faults	Solutions	How to eliminate / see Chapter
10	Gas purifier: purge valve VSPA not open	Purge valve output defective Control pressure too low	Replace purge valve output Set control pressure to 6 bar	
12	Gas purifier: securing in case of reactor heating	Reactor heater defective	Heater check	<b>MBRAUN</b> Service
33	LMF: main valve input-output filter 1 not open	Main valve solvent filter defective Control pressure too low	Replace main valve solvent filter Set control pressure to 6 bar	
34	LMF: main valve input-output filter 2 not open	Main valve solvent filter defective Control pressure too low	Replace main valve solvent filter Set control pressure to 6 bar	
35	LMF: main valve input-output filter 1 not closed	Main valve solvent filter defective	Replace main valve solvent filter	
36	LMF: main valve input-output filter 2 not closed	Main valve solvent filter defective Control pressure too low	Replace main valve solvent filter Set control pressure to 6 bar	
37	LMF: Bypass valve not open	Bypass valve solvent filter defective	Replace bypass valve solvent filter	
38	LMF: Bypass valve not closed	Valve plug unplugged Bypass valve solvent filter defective	Plug in valve plug Replace bypass valve solvent filter	
39	LMF: Motor guard vacuum pump has triggered	Vacuum pump defective Large leak in the vacuum tubing (vacuum pump is too heavily loaded by large leak)	Replace vacuum pump Eliminate large leak in the tubing Vacuum pump test	Test by <b>MBRAUN</b> Service
45	Motor guard vacuum pump VP1 has triggered	Vacuum pump defective Large leak in the vacuum tubing (vacuum pump is too heavily loaded by large leak)	Replace vacuum pump Eliminate large leak in the tubing Vacuum pump test	<b>MBRAUN</b> Service

*Definition of the alarm and warning messages (MCU)*

Nr.	Description	Possible causes of faults	Solutions	How to eliminate / see Chapter
46	Motor guard vacuum pump VP2 has triggered	Vacuum pump defective Large leak in the vacuum tubing (vacuum pump is too heavily loaded by large leak)	Replace vacuum pump Eliminate large leak in the tubing Vacuum pump test by MBRAUN Service	<b>MBRAUN</b> Service
47	Motor guard vacuum pump VP3 has triggered	Vacuum pump defective Large leak in the vacuum tubing (vacuum pump is too heavily loaded by large leak)	Replace vacuum pump Eliminate large leak in the tubing Vacuum pump test	<b>MBRAUN</b> Service
49	Motor guard cooling compressor circulation has triggered	Cooling compressor for circulation defective	Compressor test Replace compressor	By <b>MBRAUN</b> Service
50	Over or under-pressure cooling compressor circulation	Cooling compressor for circulation defective	Compressor test Replace compressor	By <b>MBRAUN</b> Service
51	fuse refrigerator has triggered	Compressor for refrigerator defective,	Replace compressor Compressor	<b>MBRAUN</b> Service / HVAC technician
52	Fuse box cooling has triggered	Compressor for box cooling defective	Replace compressor Check cabling	<b>MBRAUN</b> Service / HVAC technician
55	O2 too high automatic purge device is active	User note: oxygen value higher than alarm threshold	→ Purge box is activated automatically Eliminate leak	see chapt. 8.5.6
59	Spincoater suction valve not open	Suction valve spincoater defective Control pressure too low	Replace suction valve spincoater Set control pressure to 6 bar	
60	Spincoater: power supply fault	Power supply plug not plugged in Spincoater power supply defective	Plug in plug Replace spincoater power supply Active spincoater on touch panel	

*Definition of the alarm and warning messages (MCU)*

Nr.	Description	Possible causes of faults	Solutions	How to eliminate / see Chapter
96	Clean the H2O sensor! See operating manual (ack. message)	Maintenance interval time H2O sensor exceeded	Clean H2O sensor according to MBraun service instructions Reset the run time H2O sensor	Chap. 12
97	Gas purifier: reactor 1 main valve input not closed	Main valve defective	Replace main valve	
98	Gas purifier: reactor 1 main valve output not closed	Main valve defective	Replace main valve	
99	Gas purifier: regeneration reactor 1 interrupted	Regeneration gas supply not sufficient  Cancellation of regeneration by operator	Ensure regeneration gas supply  Restart regeneration	see Chap. 11.5.1
100	Gas purifier: regeneration reactor 1 step-by-step operation	Operator notice		see chapt. 7
101	Gas purifier: check regeneration gas flow rate - ok?	Operator notice:  Customer is asked to check the regeneration gas supply	Check regeneration gas supply	see chapt. 7
102	Gas purifier: reactor 2 main valve input not closed	Main valve defective	Replace main valve	
103	Gas purifier: reactor 2 main valve output not closed	Main valve defective  Control pressure too low	Replace main valve  Set control pressure to 6 bar	
104	Gas purifier: regeneration reactor 2 interrupted	Regeneration gas supply not sufficient  Cancellation of regeneration by operator	Ensure regeneration gas supply  Restart regeneration	see Chap. 11.5.1
105	Gas purifier: regeneration reactor 2 step-by-step operation	Operator notice		see chapt. 7

*Definition of the alarm and warning messages (MCU)*

Nr.	Description	Possible causes of faults	Solutions	How to eliminate / see Chapter
106	Gas purifier: H2O alarm	H2O measurement exceeds the set alarm limits:  Antechamber leaky, pipework leaky  Batch brought in contains too much water vapour  No cleaning effect of the reactor charging	Eliminate leak  Adjust more pump refill cycles for antechamber automatic  Regenerate reactor, use new reactor	See chapt. 9  See chapt. 7
107	Gas purifier: H2O sensor defective	H2O sensor defective  H2O sensor unplugged	Replace H2O sensor  Plug in H2O sensor	
108	Gas purifier: O2 alarm	O2 measurement exceeds the set alarm limits:  Antechamber leaky, pipework leaky  Batch brought in contains too much oxygen  No cleaning effect of the reactor charging	Eliminate leak  Adjust more pump refill cycles for antechamber automatic  Regenerate reactor, use new reactor	See chapt. 9  See chapt. 7
109	Gas purifier: O2 sensor defective	O2 sensor defective  O2 sensor unplugged	Replace O2 sensor  Plug in O2 sensor	
110	Gas purifier: blower pressure sensor defective	Blower pressure sensor defective  Blower pressure sensor unplugged	Replace blower pressure sensor  Plug in blower pressure sensor	By MBRAUN Service
111	Gas purifier: blower pressure too low	Main blower circulation does not work:  Blower unplugged  Blower or frequency converter defective	Plug in blower  Replace blower or frequency converter	By MBRAUN Service
112	Gas purifier: blower pressure too high	Hepa filter soiled	Replace Hepa filter	See chapt. 12
113	Gas purifier: fault regeneration gas sensor	<b>Option: regeneration gas sensor</b>  Regeneration gas sensor defective	Replace regeneration gas sensor	

*Definition of the alarm and warning messages (MCU)*

Nr.	Description	Possible causes of faults	Solutions	How to eliminate / see Chapter
114	Gas purifier: regeneration gas pressure too low	<b>Option: regeneration gas sensor</b>  Gas bottle empty  Regeneration gas pressure set too low	Change gas bottle  Set regeneration gas pressure ( 0.3 – 0.5 bar )	
115	Gas purifier: regeneration gas pressure too high	<b>Option: regeneration gas sensor</b>  Gas supply pressure set too high	Set regeneration gas pressure ( 0.3 – 0.5 bar )	
140	Solvent filter: filter 1 main valve input not closed	Main valve solvent filter defective	Replace main valve solvent filter	By <b>MBRAUN</b> Service
141	Solvent filter: filter 1 main valve output not closed	Main valve solvent filter defective  Control pressure too low	Replace main valve solvent filter  Set control pressure to 6 bar	By <b>MBRAUN</b> Service
142	Solvent filter: check purge gas flow rate	Operator notice:  Customer is asked to check the purge gas flow rate	Check purge gas flow rate, adjust higher than min. point and confirm the message	See chapt. 7
143	Solvent filter: filter 2 main valve input not closed	Main valve solvent filter defective  Control pressure too low	Replace main valve solvent filter  Set control pressure to 6 bar	By <b>MBRAUN</b> Service
144	Solvent filter: filter 2 main valve output not closed	Main valve solvent filter defective	Replace main valve solvent filter	By <b>MBRAUN</b> Service
145	LMF: alarm threshold solvent sensor is exceeded → Regenerate	Solvent indicator value exceeds set alarm threshold	With regenerative LMF: Regenerate reactor  With non-regenerative LMF: Replace getter material	See chapt. 7
146	Solvent filter: regeneration filter 1 interrupted	Operator notice		See chapt. 7
147	Solvent filter: regeneration filter 2 interrupted	Operator notice		See chapt. 7

*Definition of the alarm and warning messages (MCU)*

Nr.	Description	Possible causes of faults	Solutions	How to eliminate / see Chapter
160	Antechamber 1: pressure sensor fault	Atmospheric pressure sensor defective	Atmospheric pressure replace sensor	By MBRAUN Service
		Atmospheric pressure sensor unplugged	Atmospheric pressure plug in sensor	
161	Antechamber 1: vacuum sensor fault	Vacuum sensor defective	Replace vacuum sensor	By MBRAUN Service
		Vacuum sensor unplugged	Plug in vacuum sensor	
162	Antechamber 1: inner door not closed	Door switch not activated:	Replace door switch	
		Door switch defective	Close doors	
		Door not correctly closed		
163	Antechamber 1: outer door not closed	Door switch not activated:	Replace door switch	
		Door switch defective	Close doors	
		Door not correctly closed		
164	Antechamber 1: evacuation time exceeded	Antechamber leaky	Eliminate leak	
		Vacuum tubing leaky	Increase maximum evacuation time	
		Parts brought in gassing too much		
165	Antechamber 1: vacuum valve not closed	Valve plug unplugged	Plug in valve plug	
		Vacuum valve antechamber defective	Replace vacuum valve antechamber	
167	Antechamber 1: antechamber is leaky (leak test)	Automatic leak test was not passed:	Eliminate leak	
		Small leak antechamber	Increase max. leak rate	
		Parts brought in gassing too much		
175	Antechamber 2: pressure sensor fault	Atmospheric pressure sensor defective	Atmospheric pressure replace sensor	
		Atmospheric pressure sensor unplugged	Atmospheric pressure plug in sensor	
176	Antechamber 2: vacuum sensor fault	Vacuum sensor defective	Replace vacuum sensor	
		Vacuum sensor unplugged	Plug in vacuum sensor	

*Definition of the alarm and warning messages (MCU)*

Nr.	Description	Possible causes of faults	Solutions	How to eliminate / see Chapter
177	Antechamber 2: inner door not closed	Door switch not activated: Door switch defective Door not correctly closed	Replace door switch Close doors	
178	Antechamber 2: outer door not closed	Door switch not activated: Door switch defective Door not correctly closed	Replace door switch Close doors	
179	Antechamber 2: evacuation time exceeded	Antechamber leaky Vacuum tubing leaky Parts brought in gassing too much	Eliminate leak Increase maximum evacuation time	
180	Antechamber 2: vacuum valve not closed	Valve plug unplugged Vacuum valve antechamber defective	Plug in valve plug Replace vacuum valve antechamber	
182	Antechamber 2: antechamber is leaky (leak test)	Automatic leak test was not passed: Small leak antechamber Parts brought in gassing too much	Eliminate leak Increase max. leak rate	
203	Box pressure control valve VDA not open	Control valve defective Control pressure too low	Replace valve Set control pressure to 6 bar	
205	Box pressure control error -	Operator notice	Contact MBRAUN Service	By <b>MBRAUN</b> Service
206	Regeneration error -	Operator notice	Contact MBRAUN Service	By <b>MBRAUN</b> Service
207	Box valves box 1 not open	Box valves defective Control pressure too low	Replace box valve Set control pressure to 6 bar	By <b>MBRAUN</b> Service
208	Box valves box 2 not open	Box valves defective Control pressure too low	Replace box valve Set control pressure to 6 bar	By <b>MBRAUN</b> Service

*Definition of the alarm and warning messages (MCU)*

Nr.	Description	Possible causes of faults	Solutions	How to eliminate / see Chapter
210	System not ready (no box preselected)	Both box valves closed: Box not switched on activated Box valves defective Control pressure too low	Activate one or both boxes Replace box valves Set control pressure to 6 bar	
212	Box pressure sensor defective	Box pressure sensor defective Box pressure sensor unplugged	Replace box pressure sensor Plug in box pressure sensor	
213	Box pressure is too low	Vacuum valve gas purifier does not close Vacuum valve antechamber does not close Refill valve antechamber is not closed	Replace defective valve	
214	Box pressure is too high	Pressure line in the box leaky or torn Purge gas flow rate too high with automatic purge	Eliminate leak in the gas supply Limiting of purge gas flow rate	
215	Box temperature is too high	Box cooling does not work: Box cooling unplugged Box cooling compressor defective	Plug in box cooling Check/replacement of compressor by MBraun Service	<b>MBRAUN</b> Service
216	Box cooling: fault temperature sensor	Temperature sensor defective Temperature sensor unplugged	Replace temperature sensor Plug in temperature sensor	
217	Temperature refrigerator is too high	Cooling does not work: Cooling has been deactivated Door is leaky  Cooling compressor defective,	Increase temperature and wait for stabilisation of the temperature level  Check for obstacles; Check O-rings Remove and/ or replace  Replacement compressor by MBraun Service	  <b>MBRAUN</b> Service / HVAC technician

*Definition of the alarm and warning messages (MCU)*

Nr.	Description	Possible causes of faults	Solutions	How to eliminate / see Chapter
218	Refrigerator: fault temperature sensor	Temperature sensor defective Temperature sensor unplugged	Replace temperature sensor Plug in temperature sensor	
220	Box pressure control error - box open or glove tear	Box open or glove tear	Check box pane and gloves for big leak, if necessary contact MBraun Service	<b>MBRAUN</b> Service
221	Pressure sensors Box1 and Box2: impermissibly high measurement value difference	Zero point drift box pressure sensors too high Gas stream circulation Box1-Box2 differs	Perform zero point comparison box pressure sensors HEPA filter Box1 - Box2 soiled to different degrees	<b>MBRAUN</b> Service
225	Box pressure sensor Box 2 defective	Box pressure sensor defective Box pressure sensor unplugged	Replace box pressure sensor Plug in box pressure sensor	<b>MBRAUN</b> Service
226	Box pressure Box 2 is too low	Vacuum valve gas purifier does not close  Vacuum valve antechamber does not close  Refill valve antechamber is not closed	Replace defective valve	<b>MBRAUN</b> Service
227	Box pressure Box 2 is too high	Pressure line in the box leaky or torn  Purge gas flow rate too high with automatic purge	Eliminate leak in the gas supply  Limiting of purge gas flow rate	

*Recommissioning after cancellation and power failure***11.5 Recommissioning after cancellation and power failure****11.5.1 Normal flow regeneration**

Step		Time	Action – STD
0		Start 0 min.	Regeneration deactivated
1			Test regeneration gas ON
2			Test regeneration gas OFF
3			Flow of regeneration in various steps
4 – [16]			
17		MB200 after 960 Min. [MB300: after 1200 min.]	Regeneration ended

**11.5.2 Regeneration of the gas purifier RKM**

Case	Interruption in case of power failure	On return of power:
1	Cancellation in step 1 (regeneration gas check)	Unchanged -> jump to step 8 -> evacuation/refill cycles with shortened times (ges. 20 min)
2	Cancellation in steps 3 – 7	-> jump to step 8 -> evacuation/refill cycles with standard times, in order to guarantee cooling off of the reactor (regardless of the heating time already elapsed)
3	Power failure during step 3 or 4:	After return of power, the regeneration is continued at the beginning of step 3, that is, the complete heat-up phase of the regeneration process is run through again
4	Power failure during steps 5 ... 16:	After return of power, the regeneration is continued at exactly the point interrupted (no jump back to the beginning of the current step).

*Error search: leak test*

### 11.5.3 Regeneration of the gas purifier LMF

A cancellation of the regeneration programme is only possible in step 1 (without security question "Cancel yes/no"). There is a jump to the last step since no evacuation/refill cycles are necessary (RegGas = N2)

## 11.6 Error search: leak test

A leak test on the system is required

- On recommissioning
- With unexplained increase of the O<sub>2</sub> content in the box
- Unexplained pressure increase/drop in the box

This procedure can be performed by **MBRAUN** Service.

#### Training leak test procedure

**MBRAUN** offers a training of the operating personnel for performing the leak test.  
Please contact **MBRAUN** service.

<b>12.1 Introduction .....</b>	<b>12-2</b>
12.1.1 <i>Inspection and maintenance work</i> .....	12-3
12.1.1.1 Standard system.....	12-3
12.1.1.2 Optional components.....	12-3
12.1.1.3 Components of third-party manufacturers .....	12-3
12.1.2 <i>Maintenance contract with MBRAUN</i> .....	12-3
<b>12.2 Safety during maintenance and inspection work .....</b>	<b>12-5</b>
<b>12.3 Overview of cyclical inspection and maintenance work .....</b>	<b>12-9</b>
<b>12.4 Preparation for inspection and maintenance work.....</b>	<b>12-11</b>
12.4.1 <i>Basic work</i> .....	12-11
12.4.2 <i>Shutting down the system</i> .....	12-11
12.4.3 <i>De-energise system (for work on open system/on the electrical system)</i> .....	12-12
12.4.4 <i>Preparing opening of the box – fill box with ambient air</i> .....	12-13
<b>12.5 Maintenance work .....</b>	<b>12-14</b>
12.5.1 <i>Maintenance of inert gas box</i> .....	12-14
12.5.2 <i>Gloves</i> .....	12-15
12.5.2.1 Method 1: with interior sealing cover .....	12-17
12.5.2.2 Method 2: without interior sealing cover .....	12-20
12.5.3 <i>Replacing particle filter in the box</i> .....	12-22
12.5.4 <i>Calibrate/clean sensors</i> .....	12-23
12.5.4.1 Send oxygen sensor MB-OX-SE1 in for calibration .....	12-23
12.5.4.2 Cleaning MB-MO-SE-1 moisture sensor – while the system is in operation..	12-24
12.5.5 <i>Box cooling / refrigerator (optional)</i> .....	12-29
12.5.6 <i>Antechamber</i> .....	12-29
12.5.7 <i>Vacuum pump</i> .....	12-29
12.5.8 <i>Gas purification reactor</i> .....	12-29
12.5.9 <i>Solvent filter LMF (Option)</i> .....	12-30
12.5.10 <i>MCS controller</i> .....	12-32
<b>12.6 Completing maintenance – recommissioning.....</b>	<b>12-32</b>
<b>12.7 Function tests .....</b>	<b>12-33</b>
12.7.1 <i>Electrical test</i> .....	12-33
<b>12.8 Disposal of replaced components .....</b>	<b>12-33</b>
<b>12.9 Return of components .....</b>	<b>12-33</b>
<b>12.10 Decommissioning .....</b>	<b>12-34</b>

## Introduction

# 12 Inspection and maintenance

## 12.1 Introduction

In order to maintain a high safety standard for a closed inert gas system, regular inspection and maintenance of the complete system is required – including the integrated additional components of third-party manufacturers (cf. Chap. 6 Operating modes).

During the inspection and maintenance work, the closed circuit between external media connections, inert gas box and the gas purifier is interrupted.

This is associated with specific risks, which depend on the type and degree of hazard of the process materials used in the system. Please heed Chapter 4 Installation and the following section about "Safety".

### **Documenting inspection and maintenance**

Carefully adhere to the inspection and maintenance intervals and document all work in the service and maintenance log.

### **Spare parts kit**

In order to prevent production breakdowns, you should keep spare parts on hand for unplanned maintenance work so that they are constantly available (such as gloves, sensors, etc. see Chap. 14 Spare parts).

### **Who may do what?**

	Qualified + trained personnel	Qualified electrical engineer	Qualified coolant technician	Only <b>MBRAUN</b> Service
Intervention in the MCS controller				X
Electrical components		X		
Electrical-pneumatic components	X	X		
Cooling unit			X	
Maintenance work according to operating manual	X			
Repair and maintenance work not described in the operating manual				X

## 12.1.1 Inspection and maintenance work

### 12.1.1.1 Standard system

For standard systems, regular inspections must be performed of the main components gas purifier, box, antechamber and vacuum pump. *For an overview, see Chap. 12.3.*

Always perform after completing inspection and maintenance work:

- ▶ Function checks with - electrical test - leakage test

### 12.1.1.2 Optional components

MBRAUN inert gas systems can be equipped with optional additional components, for example:

- Universal measurement device
- Refrigerator, box cooling

Heed the maintenance and care instructions

*See chapter for the optional components (7-9 A.. or 10 A..)*

### 12.1.1.3 Components of third-party manufacturers

Some MBRAUN inert gas systems can be equipped with components from third-party manufacturers, for example:

- Vacuum pump(s)
- Compressor(s) for system cooling
- Compressor(s) for freezers

The original supplier documentation that describes the inspection and maintenance of these components is a component of the scope of delivery. *See Chap. 14 Supplier documentation*



#### WARNING

Risk of injury and damage!

- ▶ Heed all third-party technical documents during maintenance work.

## 12.1.2 Maintenance contract with MBRAUN

Optionally a maintenance contract can be signed with MBRAUN.

Depending on the type of processes and process materials in the inert box, the following are possible:

*Introduction*

Inspection and maintenance	1-year contract	2-year contract	5-year contract
Replace gloves	x	x	
Replace box filter		x	
Replace antechamber seals	x	x	
Calibrate pressure indicators	x		
Replace pressure indicators / sensors		x	
Cyclical calibration of sensors	x	x	x
Replace sensors		x	x
Check leak tightness of box using leak detector	x	x	x
Replace electromechanical wearing parts (valves)		x	x
Replace CPU battery			x
Replace reactor charge (disposal by customer)			x

Contact **MBRAUN** Service.

## 12.2 Safety during maintenance and inspection work

**Please note that the degree of hazard for inspection and maintenance work depends on the type of gases and process materials used.**

The requirements and maintenance cycles named in this operating manual refer to minimum requirements for standard systems without the use of hazardous process materials.

### Standard flow plan

**MBRAUN** recommends adapting the inspection and maintenance work to the specific conditions if necessary and integrating these into a specific standard flow plan for the process materials used and conditions on-site.

#### Adhering to maintenance cycles



##### DANGER

Risk of health and environmental damage due to material damage in case of non-adherence to maintenance cycles

The degree of hazard depends on the gases and process materials used.

- ▶ Adhere to the inspection and maintenance cycles
- ▶ Integrate the maintenance cycles into your operation-specific flow plan

If the inspection and maintenance cycles are not adhered to, all warranty and liability claims against **MBRAUN** are voided.

#### Qualification of personnel



##### WARNING

Risks to people and the environment due to improperly-performed inspection and maintenance work.

- ▶ Only qualified and trained personnel may perform inspection and maintenance work
- ▶ Follow the instructions in this operating manual
- ▶ Maintenance work that is not described in this operating manual may only be performed by **MBRAUN** service technicians or specially-trained personnel (HVAC technicians, electricians, qualified electro-pneumatic technicians -- see overview).

In case of improper inspection and maintenance cycles, all warranty and liability claims against **MBRAUN** are voided.

## Safety during maintenance and inspection work

### Risk of suffocation



#### DANGER

Risk of suffocation or health hazards when opening boxes under inert gas atmosphere!

- ▶ Do not breathe in inert gases!

#### Always ensure good ventilation of the room

When opening panes and doors, make sure:

- ▶ to adhere to the flow for preparation of maintenance work (*Chap. 12.4*)
- ▶ The oxygen content in the box is more than 19.5 %
  - Remove all gloves with the exception of one (the one not removed should be as close as possible in the middle of the window)
  - Fawn some minutes with the remaining glove to drive residual inertgas to out to the box

### Electrical hazards



#### DANGER

Risk to people due to electrical shock in case of improper handling of electrical components!

- Only trained and qualified electricians may perform work on electrical components of the system!

Before starting work on the control cabinet and/or electrical components:

- ▶ Switch off the system with the main switch
- ▶ Remove the system from the mains
- ▶ Secure the system against undesired switching on



#### Exceptions:

Particular maintenance work and functional tests can be performed when the power supply is switched on (replacement of sensors, filters, gloves) as long as no hazardous processes/process materials are used.

Heed the notes in this operating manual.

*Safety during maintenance and inspection work***Hazard due to process materials and gases****DANGER**

Health and environmental risks due to gases, processes and process materials used!

Gases, processes and process materials used can, in contact with oxygen, be easily flammable, explosive, toxic or present a risk to health and the environment. They can react with one another and form unintended and unknown substances.

**Before beginning maintenance work in the box**

- ▶ Mark all containers and supply lines that contain hazardous process materials
- ▶ Remove all hazardous process materials (in closed containers) from the box
- ▶ Handle all components that come into contact with process materials carefully (filter material for solvent filters, particle filters, sensors, etc.)
- ▶ Depending on the requirements, wear personal protective equipment (e.g. complete safety mask, protective gloves, safety goggles)
- ▶ Dispose of all contaminated components of the system properly according to the locally-applicable regulations.

**Removal of particle filters and sensors when the system is switched off****DANGER**

Personal injury and environmental damage due to contamination through hazardous processes/process materials!

Sensors and particle filters are constantly subjected to the gas flow in the box/the gas purifier. When using hazardous materials in the inert gas box, people and the environment are at risk!

**Before removing sensors and particle filters:**

- ▶ Purge box / pipework
- ▶ Switch off system!
- ▶ Clean box
- ▶ Follow the description in Chapter 12.4 Preparing maintenance and inspection work

Depending on the application and degree of hazard of the processes/process materials, constructive and functional additional equipment may be necessary.

Contact **MBRAUN** Service.

## Safety during maintenance and inspection work



**Only for standard systems with non-hazardous processes and process materials:**

### Maintenance work during system operation

For maintenance work during operation of the system – as for replacement of gloves, sensors or particle filters – ambient air can penetrate the system through the open flange. Box atmosphere can get into the ambient air.

---

#### **NOTICE**

During dismounting of the sensors, the contamination of the box atmosphere with ambient air must be avoided!

- ▶ Always work quickly and without interruption
  - ▶ Follow the description in the operating manual
-

*Overview of cyclical inspection and maintenance work*

### 12.3 Overview of cyclical inspection and maintenance work

The specifications of the intervals are minimum specifications. Depending on the processes/process materials used, shorter intervals may be necessary.

\*) Only by MBRAUN Service      \*\*) Only trained HVAC technicians

\*\*) Only trained electricians

		Monthly	Quarterly	Semi-annually	Annually	Other	See chap.
Inertgas box							
	Clean sensor (H2O sensor)		x				
	Calibrate sensors (O2 sensor)			x	see 12.5.1.2		MBRAUN Service
	Check to make sure that all connections are tight and free of contamination and damage		x				
	Check omega seals of the box panes		x				
	Check magnetic valves		x				
	Perform complete leak test		x				
	Perform function test		x				
	Check lighting				x		
	Check and if necessary replace magnetic valves				x		
	Check general state of gloves and check for tears.		x				
	Replace gloves					if necessary	
	Check particle filter and replace if necessary				x		

## Preparation for inspection and maintenance work

		Monthly	Quarterly	Semi-annually	Annually	Other	See chap.
Antechamber							
	Check to make sure that all connections are tight and free of contamination and damage	x					
	Check antechamber seals for damage	x					
	Replace sealing rings					if necessary	
	Optional: safety valve test 0.1 bar / 0.3 bar	x					
Vacuum Pump							
	Connection of the vacuum pump: sealing rings						
	Check functionality of the valves						
Gas purifier							
	Check to make sure that all connections are tight and free of contamination and damage		x				
	Check magnetic valves	x					
	Test blower	x					
	Test vacuum pump	x					
	Perform function test	x					
	Test blower, replace if necessary	x					
	Test purification unit	x					
	Replace reactor filling					if necessary	*)
	Check and if necessary replace valve seals	x					
	Test cooling system						**)
	Check coolant						**)
LMF							
	Replace filter medium (active carbon)	x			x		12.6.9

! Note also the details about maintenance in the chapter for the additional components (*Chap. 7 - 9 A..X*) as well as the additional equipment (*Chap. 10 A..X*).

## 12.4 Preparation for inspection and maintenance work

### 12.4.1 Basic work

- 1 ► Preparations:
  - Provide all required spare parts (gloves, particle filters, sensors, etc.)
  - Provide personal protective equipment, insofar as required
  - Provide cleaning materials (cleaning agents, cloths, waste containers)
  - Provide containers for the proper disposal of replaced components
- 2 ► Ensure good ventilation of the room
- 3 ► Unload sensitive/hazardous process materials (in closed containers).  
 **WARNING** Depending on the type and degree of hazard of the process materials used: if necessary, heed all safety-relevant requirements of your process-specific standard flow plan

### 12.4.2 Shutting down the system

- 1 ► Deactivate all processes: - of the integrated additional components - of the system (no antechamber processes active, no regeneration active)
- 2 ► Switch off circulation
- 3 ► Switch off sensors for O<sub>2</sub> and H<sub>2</sub>O
- 4 ► Close external gas feed

*Preparation for inspection and maintenance work*

**12.4.3 De-energise system (for work on open system/on the electrical system)**

- 
- 1 ► Switch off the main switch

---

  - 2 ► If necessary, disconnect the system from the mains

---

  - 3 ► Secure system against unintentional switching on

---

  - 4 ►  **DANGER** Ensure through measurement that the system is de-energised

---

  - 5 ► Begin work on the control cabinet / on the electrical system
- 

*See also: maintenance work + functional tests that require power supply*

#### 12.4.4 Preparing opening of the box – fill box with ambient air

##### Prerequisite

- > Heed the safety chapter 3
- > Heed the safety instructions in this chapter for maintenance and inspection work.
- > The set-up conditions (ventilation of the room!) are adhered to (see *Chap. 4.3.1*)
- > Preparatory work has been performed (*Chap. 12.4.1- 12.4.2*)
- > For electrical work inside the box: *Chap. 12.4.3*

 **WARNING** Before beginning maintenance work in the box/before opening the box (inner antechamber door, pane, gloves), the box must be filled with ambient air up to an oxygen content of at least 19.5 %.

---

a) **Standard boxes / antechambers with a total volume up to 6 m<sup>3</sup> (only with use of non-hazardous gases (N2) and process materials):**

Let box/antechamber atmosphere (with good room ventilation!) escape slowly:

- First open outer antechamber door and let atmosphere escape slowly
- Open inner antechamber door
- Wait appropriately depending on the box volume.
- Ensure sufficient ventilation of the room
- The box panes/doors can be opened

---

b) **Special systems: with use of large-volume boxes, hazardous gases and process materials:**

 **DANGER** The replacement of the box/antechamber atmosphere may only be done with a connected exhaust air system!

Optional: The feed of ambient air should be done using an **MBRAUN** air purge unit

Before opening box panes/doors:

- Measure the oxygen content within the box using the test flange;
- If O<sub>2</sub> content is greater than 19.5%: the box panes/doors can be opened
- Perform maintenance work

## Maintenance work

### 12.5 Maintenance work

#### Prerequisites:

- > Preparatory work has been performed (See above, section 12.4)

#### 12.5.1 Maintenance of inert gas box

##### Remedy for error messages (see Chap. 11):

- Pressure line in the box leaky or torn: eliminate leak
- Defective vacuum valve gas purifier/antechamber: replace vacuum valve
- Defective refill valve antechamber: replace refill valve
- Defective box valve: replace box valve
- Pressure indicator error: plug in/replace box pressure sensor

##### Cleaning the box pane

Clean with customary cleansers (no aggressive or caustic cleansers).

Use a soft, lint-free cloth or vacuum cleaner with soft cleaning brush.

##### System with integrated MBRAUN vacuum cleaner system:

The vacuum cleaner system can be used with a brush attachment for cleaning the inside of the pane.

## 12.5.2 Gloves

### Basic rules

- Heed the basic rules for inspection in the inert gas box chapter while using the gloves.
- Always keep a set of gloves, O-rings and glove sealing cover ready for an unplanned change (see Chap. 14 Spare parts)
- All gloveport feedthroughs may never be sealed at the same time!
- Recommendation: Train the glove change regularly so that in case of error during ongoing operation you can replace the gloves quickly and safely
- With the use of sensitive processes or those that endanger health or the environment: additional equipment for redundant safety is required! (see Chap. 4. Installation)Specify the procedure in your operation-specific standard flow plan.
- Keep the appropriate personal protective equipment (PPE) on hand.



### WARNING

Ambient air penetrates the box due to damaged gloves and disturbs the inert gas atmosphere. The box atmosphere can escape and cause personal injuries.

Depending on the gases and processes/process materials used, there can be material damage and/or personal injury (risk of suffocation!).

Never repair and reuse damaged gloves!

- ▶ Damaged gloves must always be replaced with new ones!
- ▶ Replace worn and defective gloves immediately!

### Regular care

Only outside of the gloves (user's side):

- ▶ Sprinkle with a little talcum powder

### NOTICE

#### Do not use any talcum powder:

- Box-side, on the inside of the gloves
- in cleanrooms!

## Maintenance work

### Replace gloves

The process differs depending on the type of processes/process materials used. **MBRAUN** recommends the following application types:

Application glove change	In ongoing operation	With box out of service / Box is under ambient air	Glove change with sealing cover	Glove change without sealing cover
Standard (non-sensitive, non-hazardous processes/process materials)	x			x
Standard (sensitive materials)	(X)	x	(X)	x
Replacement of several gloves for large-volume (MOD) boxes		x		x

**DANGER** With the use of processes/process materials that present a hazard to health or the environment:

There are special instructions for gloves and gloveport feedthroughs with deviating methods of changing gloves (see special chapter 8 A.. / 10 A.. "Oval gloveport feedthroughs").

### Preparation (Material + Box)

#### Preparing material:

- Glove sealing cover
- Make sure that the right gloves are used.
- With anatomical gloves, mark the right and left glove
- If necessary wear personal protective equipment



! **MBRAUN** recommends keeping on hand a help suitcase with the most important measurement devices and spare parts: for example, measurement devices such as leak testers, spare gloves, outer sealing covers, etc.

### 1. Preparation of the box:

**A Regular change with the box out of operation (with the use of gases, processes/process materials hazardous to health or the environment)**

**Take box out of operation:**

- End processes
- Purge box
- Switch system OFF
- Close gas connections
- Fill box with ambient air

**B Regular change in ongoing operation**

(only with use of process/process materials that do not endanger health and the environment)

- ▶ Prepare the glove change carefully
- ▶ Work quickly and without interruption
- ▶ Load glove sealing cover into the box
- ▶ Unload sensitive materials or keep in the antechamber in the box during the glove change
- ▶ Ensure good ventilation of the room

**Preparing status box:**

- ▶ Put box in slight over pressure (approx. 1 - 2 mbar)

#### 12.5.2.1 Method 1: with interior sealing cover

##### **NOTICE**

Undesired pressure increase in the box!

- ▶ For glove change in ongoing operation: All gloveport feedthroughs may never be sealed at the same time!

**Maintenance work**

- ▶ Attach inner sealing cover either through the gloveport feedthrough whose gloves should be replaced (knob is then outside) or through another gloveport feedthrough (knob is then inside).



Gloveport feedthrough is sealed.



- ▶ Remove both O-rings from the gloveport feedthrough
- ▶ Remove glove



- ▶ Roll new glove on firmly so that as little air as possible remains in the new glove.



**NOTE:** Place anatomical gloves in the correct position.

- ▶ Place new, rolled-on glove in the (sealed) gloveport feedthrough.



- ▶ Put new glove onto the gloveport feedthrough up to the inner notch.
- ▶ Align glove correctly on the gloveport feedthrough



- ▶ Secure glove onto the outer two notches of the gloveport feedthrough with two new O-rings.
- ▶ Remove inner sealing cover.

#### Putting the box back into operation:

##### After the glove change:

- ▶ Purge inert gas box (manually). See Chapter 8.5 Inertising the box.
- ▶ As soon as the oxygen and moisture content is less than 100 ppm, the box may be put back into circulation operation.

! To dispose of used gloves: follow Chap. 12.8

**Maintenance work****12.5.2.2 Method 2: without interior sealing cover**

- Put inert gas box in slight over pressure (approx. 1 - 2 mbar)



- Push new glove into the old glove.

**NOTE:** Make sure that both gloves lie precisely in one another so that there is as little air as possible between the gloves.



- Remove both O-rings from the gloveport feedthrough.

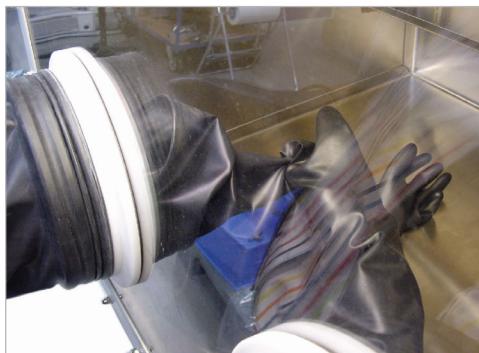


- Pull old glove off the gloveport feedthrough and
- IMMEDIATELY
- put new glove over it.

- Pull glove on the gloveport feedthrough up to the inner notch and align correctly.



- Only secure new glove first with a new O-ring on the inner notch of the gloveport feedthrough.



- ▶ Pull off old glove from inside



- ▶ Then secure new glove with a second new O-ring on the outer notch of the gloveport feedthrough.
- ▶ Unload old glove.

#### Putting the box back into operation:

After the glove change, remove unwanted oxygen and moisture remains:

- ▶ Purge inert gas box (manually) See *Chapter 8.5 Inertising the box*

! To dispose of used gloves: *follow Chap. 12.8*

## Maintenance work

### 12.5.3 Replacing particle filter in the box

#### **NOTICE**

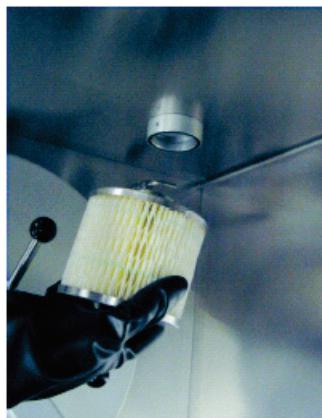
**With saturated box filter, there can be contamination/disturbance of the box atmosphere and of the process materials as well as an increase in box pressure!**

- ▶ Replace saturated filters in timely fashion
- ▶ Used filters may not be reused!

 **DANGER** with use of hazardous process materials in the box:

#### **Preparation**

- > Prepare new filter
- > Place filter in a closed container



In ongoing operation:

- ▶ Carefully pull out used filter unit.
- ▶ Place it in a container that can be sealed.
- ▶ Unload and dispose of properly.
- ▶ Carefully clean box of loose particles.



- ▶ Load new filter.
- ▶ Put on new filter and screw in.

## 12.5.4 Calibrate/clean sensors

### WARNING

The sensor is constantly subjected to the gas flow. With the use of hazardous materials in the inert gas box, there is the risk of a contamination.

The exchange process described here is not suitable for the use of hazardous materials.

- ▶ Contact **MBRAUN** for additional functions/equipment

For the removal of used sensors:

- ▶ If necessary wear personal protective equipment (PPE)
- ▶ Place the sensor in a container that can be sealed immediately after removal
- ▶ Dispose of used sensors according to all applicable local and national safety guidelines for the handling of potentially-contaminated material

Send used sensors to **MBRAUN**:

- ▶ Use the decontamination declaration
- ▶ Be sure to follow the instructions (see attachment to this chapter)

### 12.5.4.1 Send oxygen sensor MB-OX-SE1 in for calibration

The oxygen sensor MB-OX-SE1 is maintenance-free. **MBRAUN** recommends (at least) an annual calibration of the oxygen sensor. The calibration cycles depend on the use of the measurement devices and the gases used (purity, trace gases, etc.).

#### Removing the O<sub>2</sub> sensor (standard systems – only with use of non-hazardous materials)

 Only with use of non-hazardous materials: replace during operation of the system

#### Preparations

- > provide a new oxygen sensor MB-OX-SE1
- > if necessary wear personal protective equipment

#### Status system

- ▶ Switch off O<sub>2</sub> sensor on the touch panel
- ▶ Bring box pressure to a value between +1.0 and +5.0 mbar
- ▶ Switch off circulation operation

## Maintenance work

### Replacing the oxygen sensor

**CAUTION****WORK QUICKLY AND WITHOUT INTERRUPTION!**

- ▶ Open fastening flange
- ▶ Remove the used O2 sensor
- ▶ Insert the new O2 sensor

---

**!** After an exposure to the ambient air, it can take several hours until the sensor provides accurate measurement values about inert gas conditions again.

---

- ▶ Reset box pressure to normal pressure
- ▶ Switch on circulation operation
- ▶ Activate sensor on the touch panel
- ▶ Send used sensors back to **MBRAUN** Service for calibration: please use the attached decontamination declaration

#### 12.5.4.2 Cleaning MB-MO-SE-1 moisture sensor – while the system is in operation

---

##### **NOTICE**

Insufficient maintenance of the moisture sensor causes imprecise measurements and compromises the cleanliness of the box atmosphere, after 2000 hours of operation a cleaning of the sensor is necessary!

- ▶ Clean the moisture sensor at the latest when asked to do so by the pop-up menu on the touch panel (See chapters *inert gas box, sensor monitoring of the inert gas atmosphere*).

---

#### Removal of the O2 sensor (standard systems - with the use of non-hazardous materials)



Only with use of non-hazardous materials: replace during operation of the system

##### **Preparations**

- > provide a new moisture sensor MB-MOX-SE1
- > if necessary wear personal protective equipment

##### **Status system**

- ▶ Switch off Moisture sensor on the touch panel
- ▶ Bring box pressure to a value between +1.0 and +5.0 mbar
- ▶ Switch off circulation operation

### Replacing the oxygen sensor



CAUTION

**WORK QUICKLY AND WITHOUT INTERRUPTION!**

- Open fastening flange
- Remove the used H<sub>2</sub>O sensor
- Insert the new H<sub>2</sub>O sensor



After an exposure to the ambient air, it can take several hours until the sensor provides accurate measurement values about inert gas conditions again.

- Reset box pressure to normal pressure
- Switch on circulation operation
- Activate sensor on the touch panel

### Cleaning the sensor



**WARNING**

Personal injuries due to chemical burns to the skin and the eyes with use of phosphoric acid as cleanser!

- Wear protective gloves and goggles!



- In case of contact with phosphoric acid, rinse skin immediately with running water.
- If phosphoric acid gets in the eyes: Rinse eyes immediately with running water.
- Contact a physician immediately.

## Maintenance work

### Preparation:

- > soft, absorbent, lint-free cloth (cotton) / absorbent household paper
- > distilled water
- > small quantity of 85% phosphoric acid (H<sub>3</sub>PO<sub>4</sub>) .
- > blind cover for sealing the circulation pipework (DN40)
- > protective clothing, incl. protective gloves and goggles



1



2

### Unplugging the sensor cable

- 1 Moisture sensor with cable  
2 Unplug connector



3



4

### Dismounting the sensor

- 3 Loosen clamp  
4 Remove sensor



5



6

### Sealing pipework with blind flange

- 5 Put on blind cover  
6 Attach flange clamp



7



8

**Removing the protective cap**

7 Unscrew carefully

8 Carefully remove the protective cap



Distilled water



9 + 10

**Cleaning the sensor**

9 Moisten sensor with distilled water

10 Carefully clean sensor with the cloth

85% phosphoric acid H<sub>3</sub>PO<sub>4</sub>

11

**Moistening the sensor**

11 Moisten sensor completely with a thin coating of phosphoric acid.

To do that, bring a small amount of acide in a stripe on top of the sensor. Use a clean, lint-free cloth to distribute the acide as thin equal layer around the sensor.

Keep the acide away from all metal parts and also from the screw joint to avoid any rust

**Screw on the protective cap**

12 Screw the protective cap back on

## Maintenance work

### Install the moisture sensor

The installation of the moisture sensor takes place in reverse order (see above, steps 1-6):

- ▶ Remove clamp and blind cover
- ▶ Insert sensor
- ▶ Fasten sensor with the clamp
- ▶ Plug in sensor plug

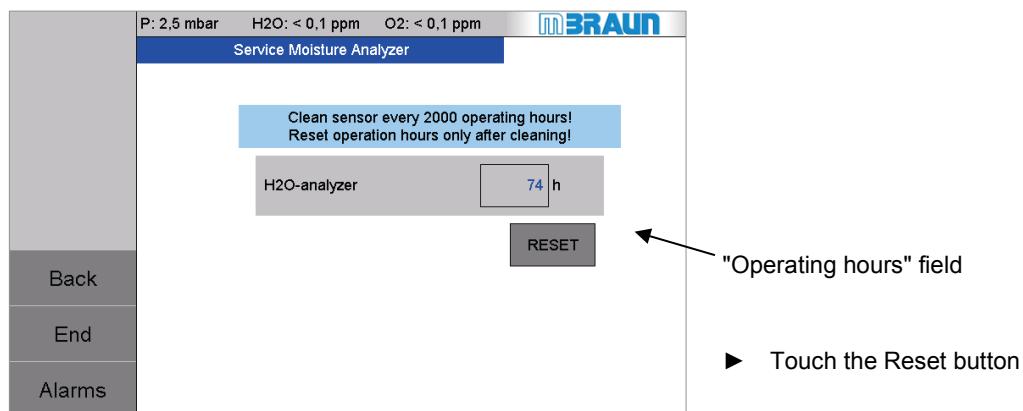
### Operating hours reset moisture sensor

After cleaning the sensor, reset the operating hours:

- ▶ Call up **Maintenance of H2O sensor** from the **General Parameters** screen.

#### Service O2 sensor

01705



- !** After fresh moistening and an exposure to the ambient air, it can take two to six hours until the moisture sensor provides accurate measurement values about inert gas conditions again.

### 12.5.5 Box cooling / refrigerator (optional)

! Maintenance may only be performed by a trained HVAC technician!

### 12.5.6 Antechamber

- |   |
|---|
| ► Check regularly:                                  |
| ▪ Sealing rings for soiling/damage/material fatigue |
| ▪ Locking mechanism for easy running                |
| ▪ Connection of the vacuum pump: sealing rings      |
| ▪ Functionality of the valves                       |

- Grease sticky antechamber doors slightly with vacuum grease
- Replace sealing rings

! Some areas must remain free of lubricants.

- Never use lubricants inside the box!

### 12.5.7 Vacuum pump

See supplier documentation

### 12.5.8 Gas purification reactor

Maintenance work on gas purification reactors may only be performed by **MBRAUN** Service, especially

- Replacement of the reactor filling
- Replacement of the heater
- Replacement of the angle valves

**Maintenance work****12.5.9 Solvent filter LMF (Option)****Prerequisites:**

**!** *Heed the safety chapter 3 and the foregoing safety instructions in Chap. 12.2*

**Heed remedy for error messages (see Chap. 11):**

- Replace main valve solvent reactor
- Set control pressure to 6 bar
- Replace bypass valve solvent reactor
- Eliminate large leak in the pipework

**Replacing the filter medium**

**MBRAUN** recommends the replacement of the filter medium after max. one year. With frequent use of solvents, an earlier replacement may be necessary.

**WARNING**

Risk of personal injury and material and environmental damage due to remaining solvents/vapours during changing of the filter medium!

- ▶ Handle the replacement of the used filter medium with the greatest care
- ▶ Wear personal protective equipment (PPE): appropriate breathing protection full mask (with suitable filter), protective gloves and eye protection, clothing protection
  - ▶
  - ▶
  - ▶
- ▶ Inform your fire safety officer before changing the filter medium
- ▶ Keep suitable extinguishing agents on hand



! Active carbon LMF (absorption principle): Reliable operation of the solvent filter is only guaranteed with active carbon from **MBRAUN** (item no. 2182000).

**Preparation:**

Provide **MBRAUN** active carbon

Provide solvent-resistant container that can be sealed

Wear personal protective equipment

**Changing the LMF filter medium:****1. Set valves: put solvent filter in bypass function****Setting the valves:**

See valve scheme *Gas purifier chapter 7.4.3*

- ▶ Open valve 3
- ▶ Close valve 1
- ▶ Close valve 2
- ▶ Put valve 4 in "closed" position.

**2. Replace filter medium**

- ▶ Open flange for emptying on the solvent filter (OUT) and catch the used filter medium in a container. Then close the flange.
- ▶ Open the flange for filling (IN) and fill with 5 kg active carbon. Then close the flange.

**3. Evacuate and refill the solvent filter**

- 
- !     ▶ Put valve 4 in the EVACUATE position and
    - ▶ leave in this position for 6 hours
  - ▶ After refilling, put the valve in the REFILL (REFILL) position until the manometer has reached the value "0" ..
  - ▶ Put valve 4 in the CLOSED (CLOSED) position. The solvent filter can be put back into circulation operation (see chap. Gas purifier solvent filter (LMF)).

*Completing maintenance – recommissioning***12.5.10 MCS controller**

- ▶ Replace buffer battery (CR2032)
- ▶ Check tight fit of all clamps
- ▶ In case of error, it may be necessary to replace the controller: please contact **MBRAUN** Service.

**12.6 Completing maintenance – recommissioning**

<b>Follow-up:</b>	
1	Establish current connection
2	Switch system on
3	Function checks - with power supply: - Valves - Sensors
4	Perform leak test on the system

## 12.7 Function tests

### 12.7.1 Electrical test

After each change to the electrical systems / maintenance and repair, perform an electrical test.



Cyclical testing is due according to BGV A3 or in-house regulation.

- ▶ Document the test performed in your maintenance log.

## 12.8 Disposal of replaced components

- ! All replaced components must be disposed of properly according to local regulations without endangering health or the environment.

#### Solvent filter (active carbon)

The filter material of solvent filters (active carbon) can be contaminated by process chemicals and solvents.

- ▶ Heed the requirements from the safety data sheets (material data sheets) of the process materials used.
- ▶ Dispose of the filter material according to the locally-applicable national guidelines.

## 12.9 Return of components

Before parts can be sent to **MBRAUN**:

- ▶ Fill out the included "Decontamination declaration" form:
- ▶ First send the decontamination declaration to **MBRAUN**
- ▶ Await confirmation: **MBRAUN** Service will inform you whether the parts can be accepted
- ▶ Only send parts after receiving confirmation

- ! **MBRAUN** does not accept parts if

- Parts are sent without filled-out "Decontamination declaration" form and there is no initial confirmation from Service
- Contaminated parts are those that were in contact with substances that pose risks to health and the environment

## *Decommissioning*

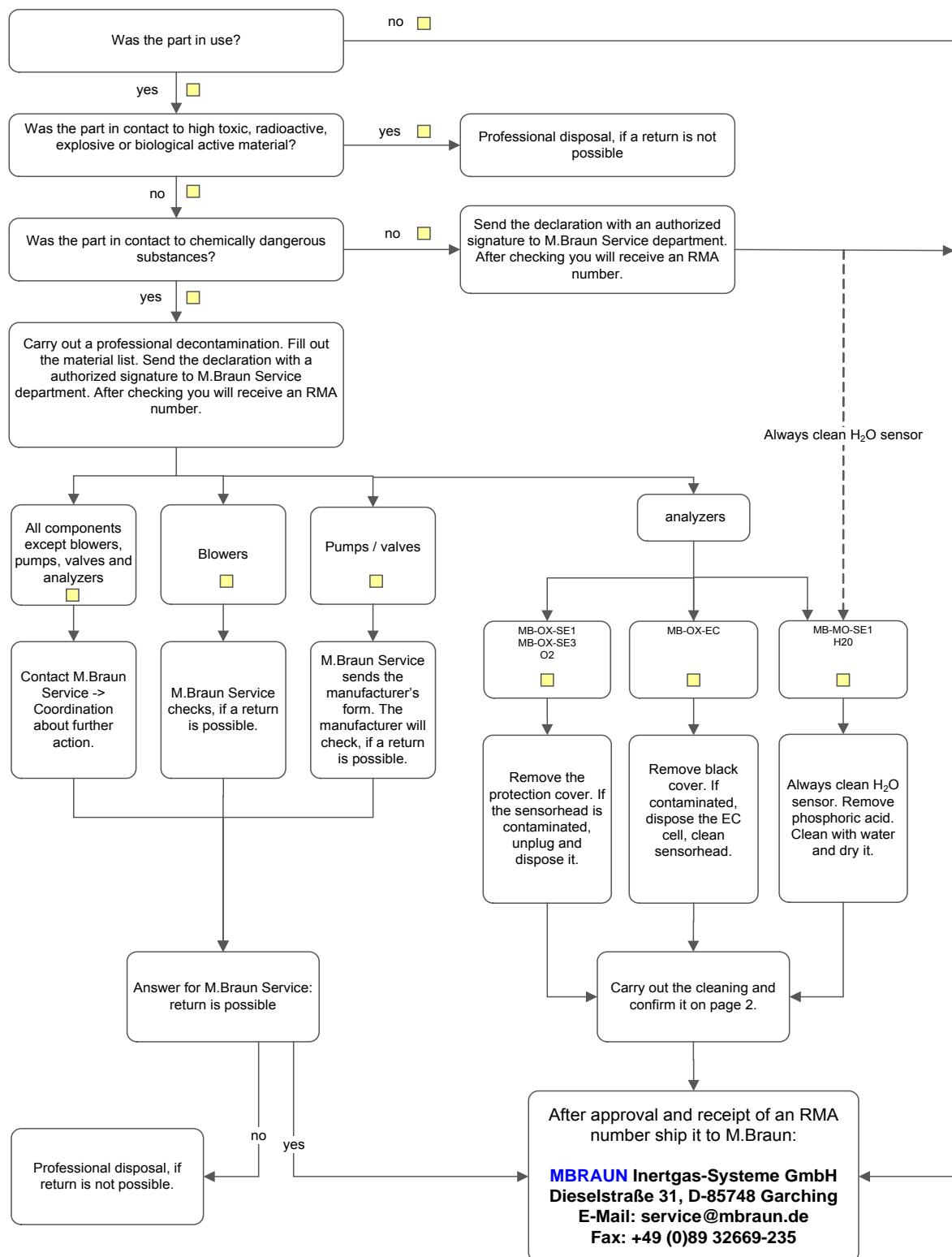
### 12.10 Decommissioning

In case of a decommissioning of an inertgas box

- Remove all residual inertgas from the box
- Deliver all recoverable materials to the appropriate collection points for recycling and re-use
- Follow all local applicable laws and regulation for the disposal of materials

# Declaration about Decontamination

**MBRAUN**



Legally binding declaration:

We hereby assure that the information in this statement is correctly determined, sincere and complete. The transport of the contaminated product is carried out in accordance with legal provisions. We know that we are liable to the contractor for damages caused by incomplete and incorrect information.

Name of the authorized person (Please print)	Date	Signature	Company stamp

## Declaration about Decontamination



The service and repair of M.Braun glove boxes and their components can only be performed after presentation of this filled form. The completed filled declaration must have been checked by M.Braun Service before a part can be accepted. After inspection and approval of the declaration you will receive a return material authorisation number (**RMA number**).

Note: The shipment of contaminated parts may be a violation of national and international laws.

1. Project number / year of manufacturing	6. Company / institute
2. Type of component: blower, analyzer....	7. Address
3. Type / name / serial number	
4. Special equipment installed (e.g. LMF)	
5. Reasons for return	

### List of hazardous materials and certification of decontamination

Enter all hazardous materials which the component was in contact with. Please print:

Pos.	CAS-Nr.	Name of chemical	Chemical formula	Class of risk
1				
2				
3				
4.				
5.				
6.				

Hereby we assure that the component has been cleaned and it is not contaminated.

Date

Signature

<b>13.1 Gasreinigung / Gas Purifier / Purificateur de gaz .....</b>	<b>13-4</b>
13.1.1 Standard: Vorderansicht / Front View / Vue de face .....	13-4
13.1.2 Rückansicht / Rear side / Vue arrière.....	13-5
13.1.3 Option: Boxspülen / Box Purging / Purge de la boite .....	13-7
13.1.4 Option: Lösungsmittelfilter / Solvent filter / Filtre à solvants .....	13-8
13.1.5 Option: ECO Mode / Eco Mode / .....	13-10
<b>13.2 Inertgas-Box / Inertgas Box / Boîte à gants.....</b>	<b>13-11</b>
13.2.1 Gehäuse MOD (Pro) und Beleuchtung / Chassis and light / Châssis et éclairage (Pro).....	13-11
13.2.2 Gehäuse (Plus) und Beleuchtung / Chassis and light / Châssis et éclairage (Plus).....	13-12
13.2.3 Partikelfilter / Particle Filter / Filtre à particules .....	13-13
13.2.4 Handschuhe + Zubehör / Gloves and Accessories / Gants et accessoires .....	13-14
13.2.5 Messgeräte / Sensors / Capteurs de mesure .....	13-18
<b>13.3 Schleusen / Antechambers / Sas .....</b>	<b>13-19</b>
13.3.1 Hauptschleuse / Main Antechamber / Sas principal 390 mm .....	13-19
13.3.2 Minischleuse / Mini Antechamber / Mini Sas 150 mm .....	13-24
<b>13.4 Vakuum-Pumpe / Vacuum Pump / Pompe à vide.....</b>	<b>13-25</b>
13.4.1 Standard.....	13-25
13.4.2 Upgrade: Tri-Scroll-Vakuum-Pumpe / Vacuum pump / Pompe à vide .....	13-25
<b>13.5 Steuerung / Controlling / Commande .....</b>	<b>13-27</b>
13.5.1 Bedienpanel / Operation Panel / Écran tactile.....	13-27
13.5.2 Fußschalter / Foot Switch / Pédalier.....	13-28
<b>13.6 Option : Kühlschrank / Refrigerator / Congélateur .....</b>	<b>13-29</b>

## 13 Ersatzteile / Spare Parts / Pièces détachées



Workstation  
UNILab Pro SP/DP



Workstation  
UNILab Plus SP/DP

! **MBRAUN** empfiehlt, einen Ersatzteil-Koffer mit den wichtigsten Ersatzteilen bereit zu halten: beispielsweise Ersatzhandschuhe, Außenverschlussdeckel, O2- und H2O-Sensoren.

**MBRAUN** recommends to hold a spare part case with the main spare parts in stock, such as gloves, antechamber door, O2 and H2O-analyzer etc.

**MBRAUN** recommande d'avoir un lot de pièces détachées en stock, comme des gants, porte de sas, Sondes O2 et H2O

## Übersicht / Overview / Vue d'ensemble



Pos	Beschreibung/ Description /Description	Siehe Kap /.See chapter /Voir chapitre
1	Gasreinigung / Gas Purifier / Purificateur De gaz	13.1
2	Inertgas-Box / Inertgas box / Boîte à gants	13.2
3	Schleuse / Antechamber / Sas	13.3
	▪ Hauptschleuse / Main antechamber / Sas rond - 390 mm	
	▪ Mini-Schleuse / Mini antechamber / Mini sas - 150 mm	
4	Vakuum-Pumpe / Vacuum pump / Pompe à vide (option)	13.4
5	Steuerungselemente / Controlling elements / Éléments de commande	13.5
a)	Bedienpanel / Touchpanel / Écran tactile	
b)	Fußschalter / Foot switch / Pédalier	
6	Zusatzkomponente (option): Additional components (option) Composants Supplémentaires (option) : Kühlschrank Refrigerator Congélateur	13.6

## Gasreinigung / Gas Purifier / Purificateur de gaz

## 13.1 Gasreinigung / Gas Purifier / Purificateur de gaz

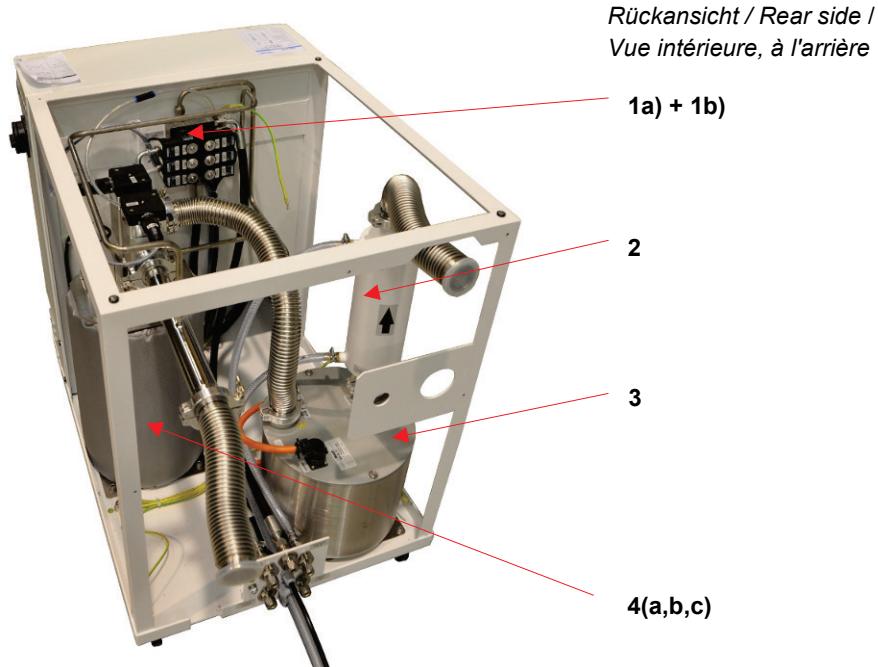
## 13.1.1 Standard: Vorderansicht / Front View / Vue de face

Vorderansicht / Front View / Vue de face



Nr.	Beschreibung Description Description	Merkmal Feature Caractéristique	Artikel-Nr. Item no. Article-no
1	Schalschrank Electrical Cabinet Armoire électrique	(elektrische Komponenten siehe Schaltbild, Kap. 13) (electrical components see Wiring Diagram) (composant d'électrique voir Schéma de câblage)	
2	Hauptschalter Main switch Interrupteur principal	2polig, 16A,600V	2602675
3	Durchflussmesser komplett / Flowmeter complete Débitmètre complet	4..25 NI	2600027

## 13.1.2 Rückansicht / Rear side / Vue arrière



Nr.	Beschreibung Description Description	Merkmal Feature Caractéristique	Artikel-Nr. Item no. Article-no
1 a	Ventil-Set Valve set Kit de vannes	(Spule, Kern, Feder) (Core, spool, spring) (bobine, noyau, ressort)	2600793
1 b	Ventil-Block Valve Block- Distributeur	6-fach / 6 valves / 6 voies	4600978 *)
		10-fach / 10 valves / 10 voies	4600979 **)
2	Kühler Heat Exchanger Echangeurthermique	komplett / complete / complet	7016893 ***)
3	Gebläse Blower Turbine	MB-LTBL-88	9002832
4 a	Reaktor Gasreinigung, komplett Reactor Gas purification, complete Réacteur de purification de gaz, complet	H2O / O2, 230 V	9002043-KF
		H2O / O2, 115 V	9002044-KF
4 b	Kupferkatalysator Cu-Catalyst Catalyseur cuivre	4.5kg	2600839
4 c	Molekularsieb Molecular sieve Tamis moléculaire	5.5 kg	3240262

\*)

SP Version

\*\*)

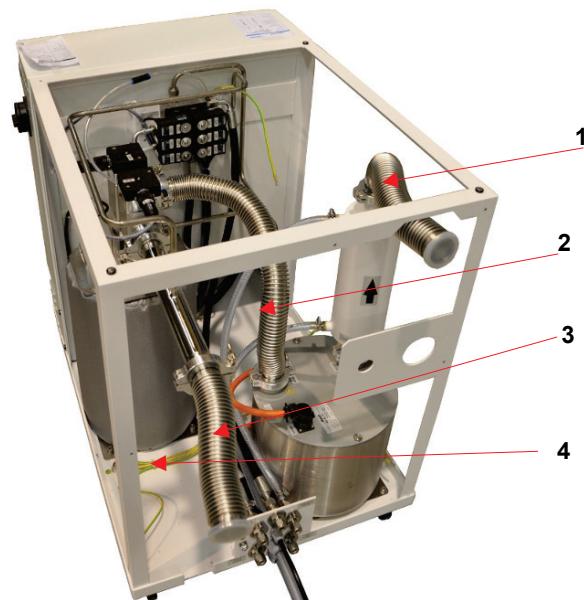
DP Version

\*\*\*)

option

## Gasreinigung / Gas Purifier / Purificateur de gaz

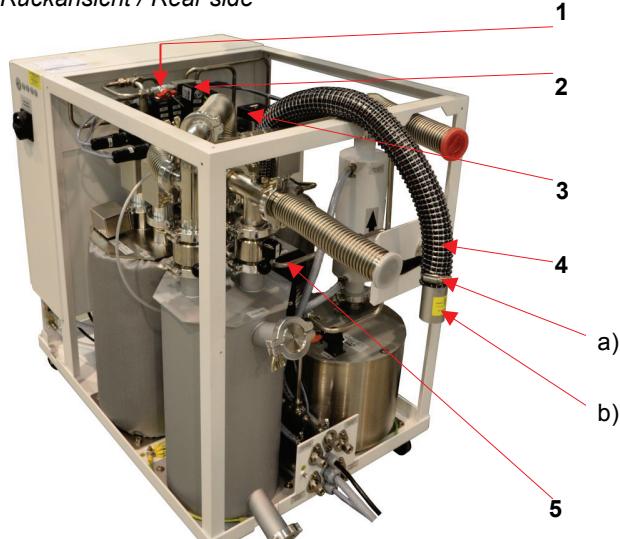
Forts. Rückansicht / Rear side /  
Vue intérieure, à l'arrière



Nr.	Beschreibung Description Description	Merkmal Feature Caractéristique	Artikel-Nr. Item no. Article-no
1	Wellschlauch Flexline Tuyau annelé	DN40KFx350	3203000
2	"	DN40KFx500	3200072
3	"	DN40KFx250	3240545
4	Haupterdungsanschluss Main grounding connection Raccord de terre principal	10mm <sup>2</sup> / 5meter	2603712
--	Erdungssatz für Groundig-Set for Kit de mise à la terre pour	UNILAB	2603711
--	"	Labmaster	2603710

## 13.1.3 Option: Boxspülen / Box Purging / Purge de la boîte

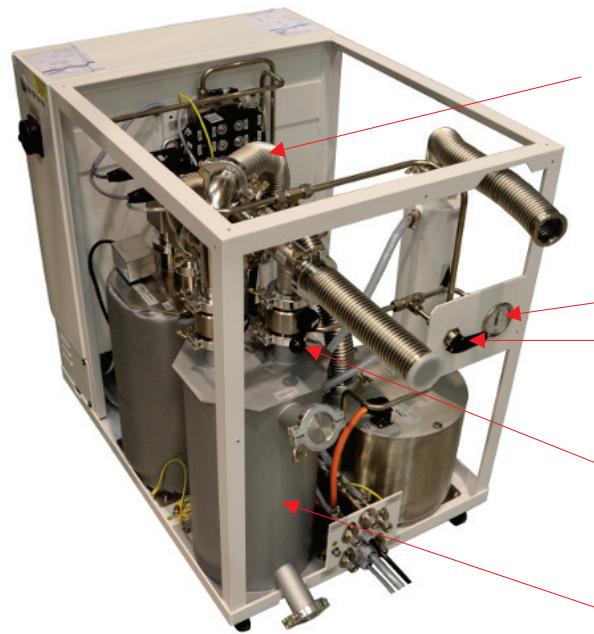
Rückansicht / Rear side



Pos	Beschreibung Description Description	Merkmal Feature Caractéristique	Artikel-Nr. Item no. Article-no
1	Kugelhahn 2-Wege 2-way ball valve Robinet à boisseau	3/8" V2A	3240521
	„	3/8" MS	5017016
2	Magnetventil Magnetic Valve Set Électrovanne	VSE	4600977
3	Eckventil HV Angle Valve Vanne à angle droit	MB-EPV-40 (Al)	9002531-K
	„	vernickelt, NI-plated, nickelée	9002533-K
4	PVC-Schlauch (Spülen Ausgang) PVC-Hose (Purging Outlet) Tuyau en PVC (sortie de purge)	800mm	2602195
a)	Schlauchklemme Hose clamp Collier pour tuyaux souples	32-50mm	2501116
b)	Al-Rohr 42x1 L=100mm Al-Tube Tube en Alu	42x1 L=100mm	2300221
5	Rückschlagventil komplett (Ausgangventil) Non-return valve (Purging out) Clapet anti-retour (vanne de sortie)	DN40 komplett	7024588

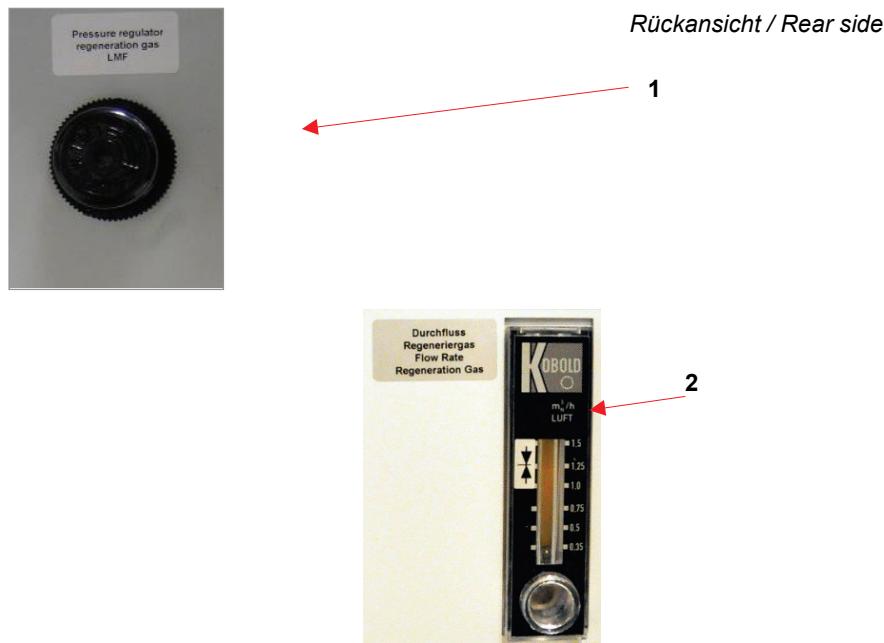
## 13.1.4 Option: Lösungsmittelfilter / Solvent filter / Filtre à solvants

Rückansicht / Rear side



Pos	Beschreibung Description Description	Merkmal Feature Caractéristique	Artikel-Nr. Item no. Article-no
1	Wellschlauch Flexline Tuyau annelé	DN40KFx500	3200072
2	Manometer Manomètre	-1/+0,6bar -100/60kPa	3000072
3	3-Wege-Ventil 3-Way Ball Valve Vanne 3 voies	10mm MS 10mm BS 10mm MS	2200480
4	Handventil Manual valve Vanne manuelle	DN40KF VA DN40KF SS DN40KF VA	9004501
5	Lösungsmittelfilter Solvent Filter Colonne Filtre à solvants	LMF	9007091
--	Aktivkohle Activated Carbon Charbon actif	5.5kg	2182000

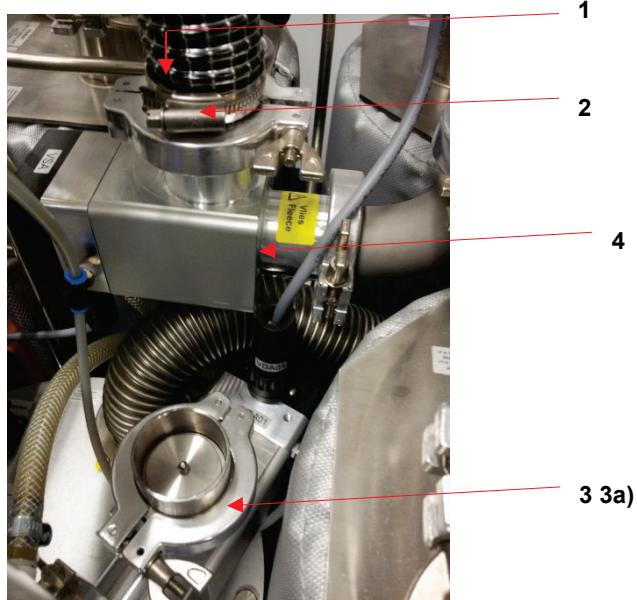
### 13.1.4.1 Option: Regenerierbarer LMF / Regenerable solvent filter / Filtre à solvants régénérable



Pos	Beschreibung Description Description	Merkmal Feature Caractéristique	Artikel-Nr. Item no. Article-no
1	Druckregler Pressure controller Régulateur de pression	1/8"	4601276
2	Durchflussmesser komplett Flowmeter complete Débitmètre complet	mit Rückschlagventil with non- return-valve avec clapet anti-retour	2600027
--	Reaktor regenerierbar Reactor regenerable Réacteur régénérable	H2O/ O2 - 230V 13A für / for / pour reg. LMF	7038320
--	Molekularsieb Molecular sieve Tamis moléculaire	13x 1/8 APG	3240262

## 13.1.5 Option: ECO Mode / Eco Mode /

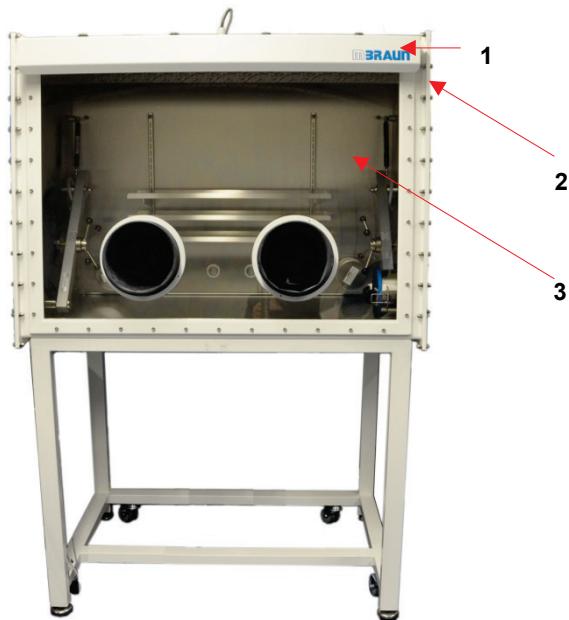
Rückansicht / Rear side



Pos	Beschreibung Description Description	Merkmal Feature Caractéristique	Artikel-Nr. Item no. Article-no
1	PVC-Schlauch (Spülen Ausgang) PVC-Hose (Purging Outlet) Tuyau en PVC (sortie de purge)	800mm	2602195
2	Schlauchklemme Hose clamp Collier pour tuyaux souples	32-50mm	2501116
3	Eckventil HV Angle Valve Vanne à angle droit "	MB-EPV-40 (Al)  vernickelt, NI-plated, nickelée	9002531-K 9002533-K
3a	Rückschlagventil komplett (Ausgangventil) Non-return valve (Purging out) Clapet anti-retour (vannede sortie)	DN40 komplett	7024588
4	Wie 3 / same as 3 /	--	--

## 13.2 Inertgas-Box / Inertgas Box / Boîte à gants

### 13.2.1 Gehäuse MOD (Pro) und Beleuchtung / Chassis and light / Châssis et éclairage (Pro)

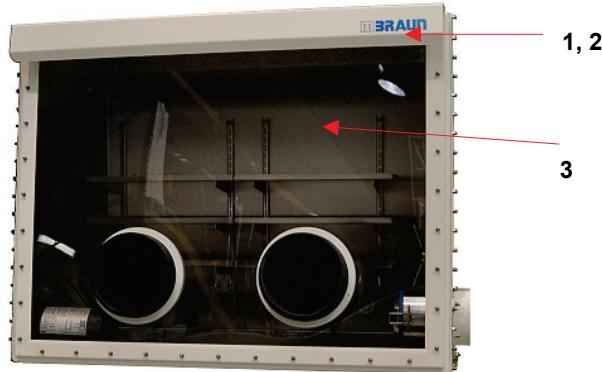


Pos	Beschreibung Description Description	Merkmal Feature Caractéristique	Artikel-Nr. Item no. Article-no
1	Beleuchtung komplett Lightening complete Éclairage complet	L1 - 1200/1250/1500	7070758
		L 2 - 1800/2000	7075061
2	Leuchtstofflampe - Tageslicht weiß Fluorescent lamp - cool white Tube fluorescent - lumière du jour blanche	L1 - 30W	2603476
		L2 - 58W	2603916
3	Scheibe Polycarbonat *) Window polycarbonate Vitre en polycarbonate	MOD-1250	7002195
		MOD-1500	7002448
		MOD-1800	7002443

\*) Weitere Artikel bei **MBRAUN** erfragen  
 For further articles ask **MBRAUN**  
 Autres articles disponibles auprès de **MBRAUN**

## Inertgas-Box / Inertgas Box / Boîte à gants

## 13.2.2 Gehäuse (Plus) und Beleuchtung / Chassis and light / Châssis et éclairage (Plus)



Pos	Beschreibung Description Description	Merkmal Feature Caractéristique	Artikel-Nr. Item no. Article-no
1	Beleuchtung komplett lighting complete éclairage complet	<b>L1</b>	7070758
		<b>L2 / L3</b>	7075061
2	Leuchtstofflampe Fluorescent lamp Lampe fluorescente	<b>L1 30W</b>	2603476
		<b>L2 / L3 58W</b>	2603916
3	Scheibe Polycarbonat Window polycarbonate Vitre en polycarbonate	<b>L1</b>	7002688
		<b>L2</b>	--
		<b>L3</b>	7011242
	Länge der Box Length of the box Longueur de la boîte	[mm]	<b>L1 1200</b> <b>L3 2000</b>

## 13.2.3 Partikelfilter / Particle Filter / Filtre à particules



Pos	Beschreibung Description Description	Merkmal Feature Caractéristique	Artikel-Nr. Item no. Article-no
1	Partikelfilter Particlefilter Filtre à particules	MB-BF-L-03 (H13)	9004513

**Inertgas-Box / Inertgas Box / Boîte à gants****13.2.4 Handschuhe + Zubehör / Gloves and Accessoires / Gants et accessoires****13.2.4.1 Handschuhe / Gloves / Gants**

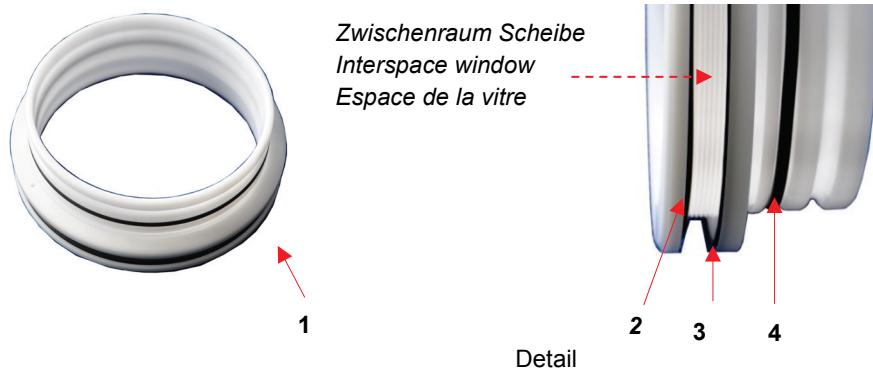
Pos	Beschreibung Description Description	Ø [mm]	Material Matérial Matériau	Stärke Strength Epaisseur [mm]	Größe Size Taille	Merkmal Feature Caractér.	Artikel-Nr. Item no. Article-no
1	Handschuhe Gloves Gants	220	Brom- Butyl	0,4 1)	Large	A	3000047
				0,4	Large	Y	3240567
				0,4	Medium	A	3000018
				0,8	Large	Y	3240568
				0,8	Large	A	3000048
		160	Hypalon	0,4	Medium	A	3005010
				0,4	Large	Y	3005009
		160	Brom- Butyl	0,4	Large	Y	3000051
				0,4	Large	A	3000050
		Oval		0,4	Large	Y	3005008
	Legende Legend Légende			1) Standard Y beidhändig / ambidextrous / ambidextre A anatomisch / anatomical / anatomique			

Handschuhe ohne Talkum : Artikel-Nr. wie oben und – OT (z.B. 3000047-OT)

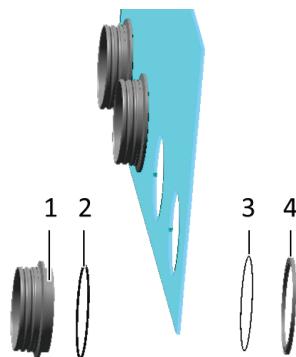
Gloves without talcum powder : Article No. as above shown and – OT (z.B. 3000047-OT)

Gants sans talc: Numéro d'article ci-dessus et –OT (p.ex. 3000047-OT)

## 13.2.4.2 Handschuh-Durchführung / Glove Feedthrough / Rond de gant



Pos	Beschreibung Description Description		Ø [mm]	Merkmal Feature Caractéristique	Artikel-Nr. Item no. Article-no
1	Handschuhdurchführung kpl. Gloveport feedthrough cpl. Rond de gant cpl.		220	mit O-Ringen with O-Rings avec joint toriques	7070842
			160		9004667
2	O-Ringe für O-rings for Joint torique	innere Handschuhdurchführung inner gloveport feedthrough Rond de gant intérieur	220	250x4	2400138
	äußere Handschuhdurchführung outer gloveport feedthrough Rond de gant extérieure	239x7		2603048	
3	O-Ringe für O-rings for Joint torique	Befestigung Handschuhe fixation of gloves Fixation de gant	180x6		2600239
					2600240

**Inertgas-Box / Inertgas Box / Boîte à gants****Handschuhdurchführung Aluminium / Gloveport feedthrough Aluminium / Rond de gant Aluminium**

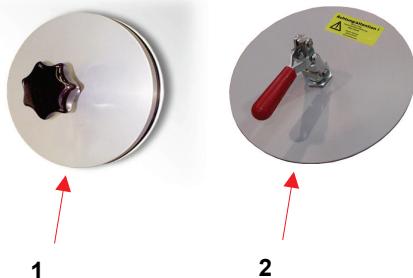
Pos	Beschreibung Description Description		Ø [mm]	Merkmal Feature Caractéristique	Artikel-Nr. Item no. Article-no
1	Handschuhdurchführung Aluminium Gloveport feedthrough Alumium Rond de gant Aluminium		220		7057617
2	O-Ringe für O-rings for Joint torique	äußere Handsuhdurchführung outer gloveport feedthrough Rond de gant extérieure	220	244x7	2400117
3	O-Ringe für O-rings for Joint torique	innere Handsuhdurchführung inner gloveport feedthrough Rond de gant intérieur	220	250x4	2400138
4	Ringe für Rings for Joint torique	Befestigung Handschuhe fixation of gloves Fixation de gant	220	Von innen verschraubt screwed from inside boulonné de l'intérieur	7057618

Weitere Handschuhtypen und O-Ringe können über die **MBRAUN** -Serviceabteilung bestellt werden

Other types of gloves and O-rings can be ordered through the **MBRAUN** Service Department.

D'autres types de gants et joints toriques peuvent être commandés auprès du Service Maintenance **MBRAUN**.

## 13.2.4.3 Verschlussdeckel / Port cover / Couvercle



Pos	Beschreibung description description	Ø [mm]	Merkmal feature entité	Artikel-Nr. item no. article-no
1	Innenverschlussdeckel Inner glove port cover Couvercle intérieur pour rond de gant	160		7024831
		220		9002371
2	Außenverschlußdeckel Outer glove port cover Couvercle extérieur pour rond de gant	160		7024791
		220		7019882

## Inertgas-Box / Inertgas Box / Boîte à gants

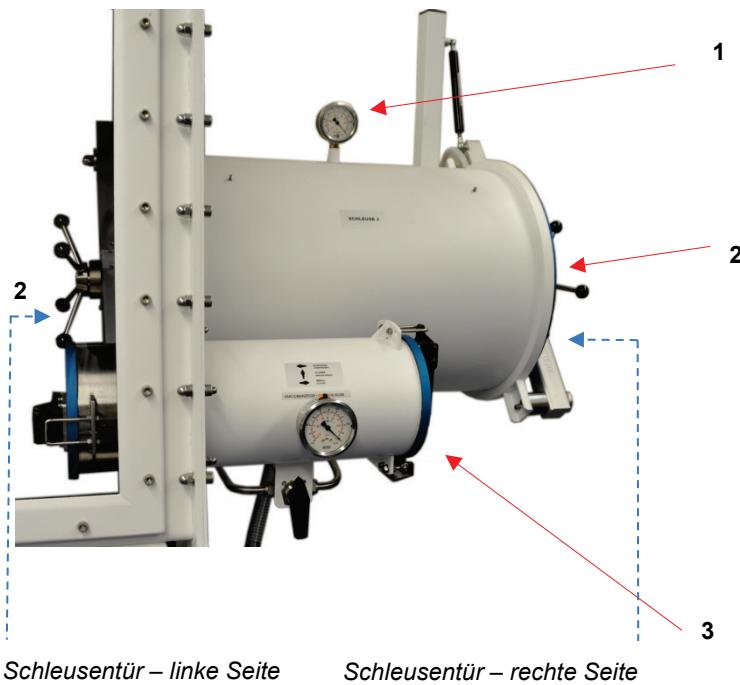
## 13.2.5 Messgeräte / Sensors / Capteurs de mesure



Pos	Beschreibung Description Description	Merkmal Feature Caractéristique	Artikel-Nr. item no. article-no
1	O2 Sensor O2 Sensor Capteur O2	<0.1 – 1000 ppm O2	1500686
1a	blaues Anschlußkabel 10m blue Connection cable 10m	Blue RJ45	2604966-S
2	H2O Sensor H2O Sensor Capteur H2O	<0.1 – 500 ppm H2O	1500685
2a	Grünes Anschlußkabel 10m green Connection cable 10m	Green RJ45	2604967-S
3	O2 Sensor O2 Sensor Capteur O2	<0.1 – 1000 ppm O2	1500716
3a	blaues Anschlußkabel 10m blue Connection cable 10m	Blue RJ45	2604966-S
4	Boxdruck-Sensor Box pressure sensor Capteur de pression de la boîte	+/- 20mbar	4970009
4a)	Sensor-Kabel, geschirmt Actor cable, shielded Câble de raccordement, blindé	M12, 4-polig, 5 m	5008018

### 13.3 Schleusen / Antechambers / Sas

#### 13.3.1 Hauptschleuse / Main Antechamber / Sas principal 390 mm



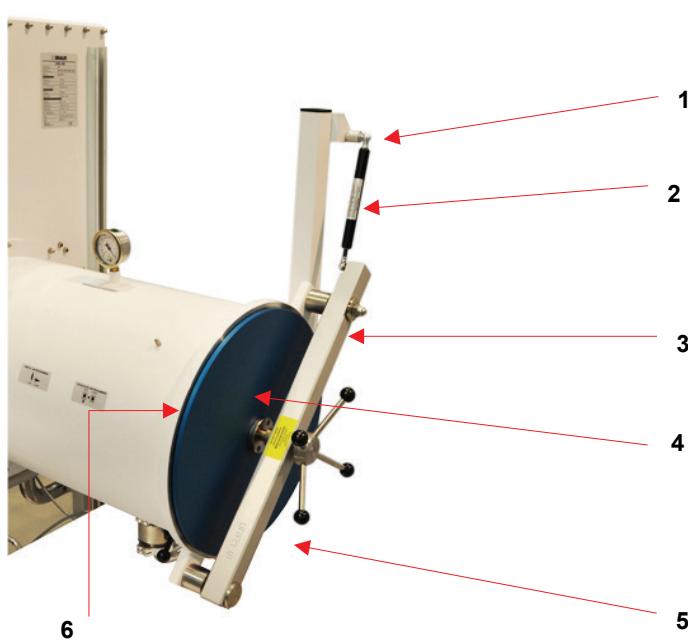
Pos	Beschreibung Description Description	Merkmal Feature Caractéristique	Artikel-Nr. Item no. Article-no
1	Manometer Manometer Manomètre	G1/4 - VA - 1/0 bar.-100/0 kPa	2405004
2	Schaltkreuz Antechamber door handle Poignée de porte	innen + außen inner + outer en dedans + extérieure	7040131
3	Minischleuse Mini antechamber Mini sas	siehe / see / voir 13.3.2	

Details Schleusendeckel - siehe nächste Seite

Details Antechamber cover - see following page

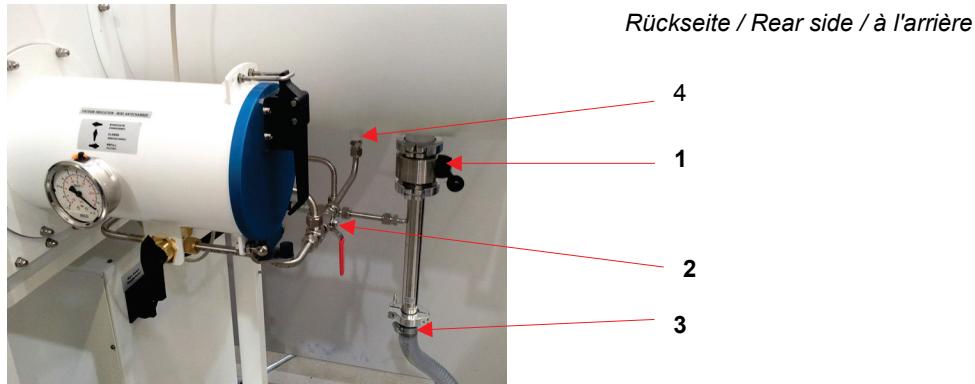
Détails de la porte du sas - voir page suivante

## Schleusen / Antechambers / Sas



Pos	Beschreibung / Description Description	Merkmal Feature Caractéristique	Artikel-Nr. Item no. Article-no
1	Gewindebuchse / Door shock spacer Douille filetée		7003702
2	Gasdruckfeder 120mm Hub / Gaspiston for antechamber / Amortisseur à gaz	350N 300N (standard)	2179000 3240327
3	Schleusenbalken Türhalter Door arm complete Barre de sas support de porte "	rechts / right / côté droit	6000034
		links / left / côté gauche	6000035
4	Schleusendeckel / Antechamber door Porte de sas		7003674
5	Schleusendeckel komplett *) Antechamber door cover, complete *) Porte de sas complète *) *) mit Schleusendeckel, - balken + Gasdruckfeder *) with antechamber door, - door arm, Doors hock spacer *) avec Porte de sas , Barre de sas, Amortisseur à gaz	Rechts / right côté droit	9005225
		links left côté gauche	9005226
6	O-Ring für Schleusendeckel O-ring for Antechamber Door Joint torique pour porte de sas	Innen und außen Inner and outer intérieur et extérieur)	2400309

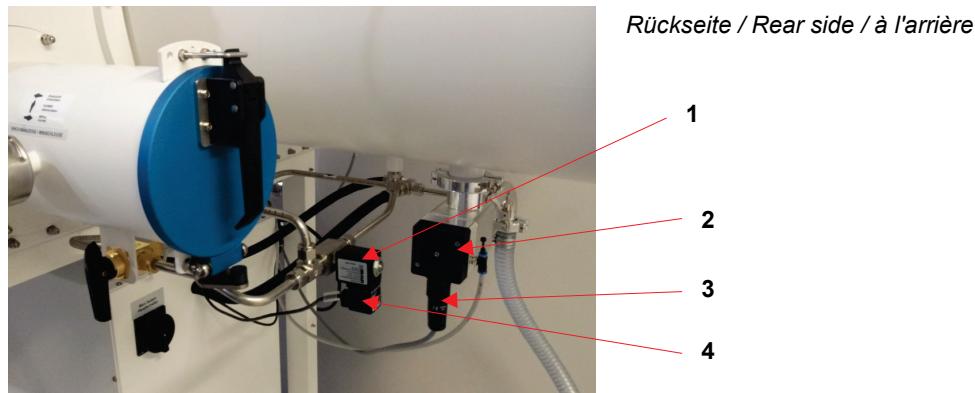
### 13.3.1.1 Hauptschleuse Handventile / Main antechamber hand valves / Sas principal vanne manuelle



Pos	Beschreibung Description Description	Merkmal Feature Caractéristique	Artikel-Nr. Item no. Article-no
1	Handventil (DN40 VA) Butterfly valve		9004501
2	2-Wege Kugelhahn 3/8' 2-way ball valve 3/8'		3240521
3	Vakuumumschlauch Vacuum hose Tuyau à vide	I = 660mm, flexibel	7038898
4	Einschraub-Verschraubung Screwed insert	10mm x 3/8' ISOA konisch	2210047

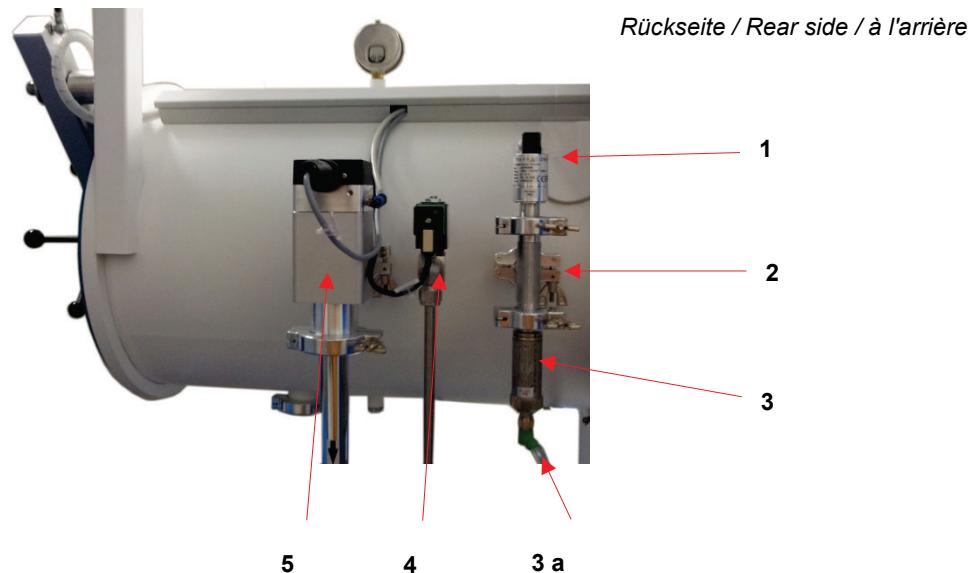
## Schleusen / Antechambers / Sas

## 13.3.1.2 Schleusenautomatik zeitgesteuert/ Automatic AC time-controlled / Sas automatique du temps



Pos	Beschreibung Description Description	Merkmal Feature Caractéristique	Artikel-Nr. Item no. Article-no
1	Magnetventil Magnetic valve Électrovanne	2/2-Wege / ways / à voies 0-8 bar	4600977
2	Eckventil Angel Valve Vanne à angle droit	MB-EPV-40 (Al)	9002531-K
	Eckventil Angel Valve Vanne à angle droit	MB-EPV-40 vernickelt / Ni-plated / nickelé	9002533-K
3	Ventilbuchsenstecker mit Kabel	7-pol. EPV40, I = 4m	5006151
4	Ventilstekverbinder	2-pol, LED, I = 4,6m	5006097

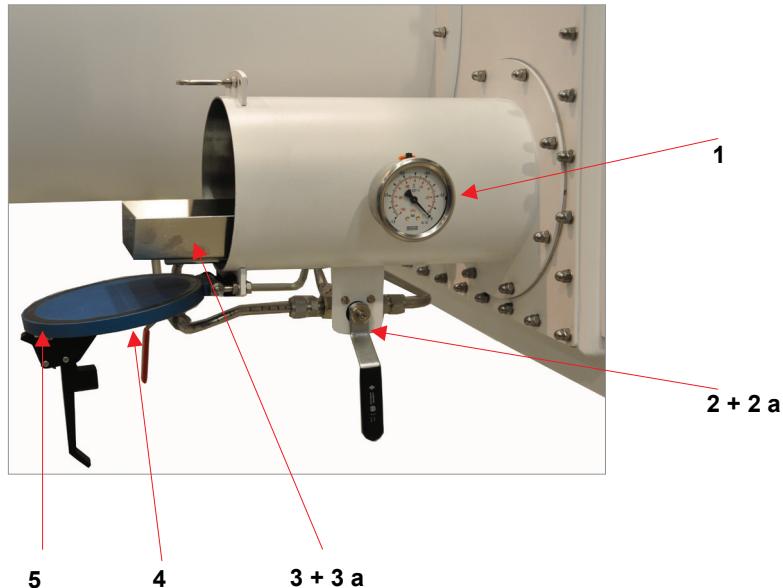
## 13.3.1.3 Schleusenautomatik / Automatic AC / Sas automatique



Pos	Beschreibung Description Description	Merkmal Feature Caractéristique	Artikel-Nr. Item no. Article-no
1	Pirani Messröhre Vacuum pirani sensor Jauge de mesure Pirani	0..1000 mbar	3226006
2	T-Stück T-Piece Raccord en T	DN16 ISO-KF Alu / Alloy / inox	3201024
	"	DN16 ISO-KF Edelstahl / Stainless steel /inox	3201050
3	Atmosphären-Drucksensor Atmospheric pressure sensor Capteur de pression atmosphérique	-1000..636 mbar, 1..10V	4970007
3 a	Anschlusskabel Connection cable Câble de raccordement	M12, 5 m	5008018
4	Magnetventil Magnetic valve Électrovanne	2/2-Wege / ways / à voies 0-8 bar	4600977
5	Eckventil Angel Valve Vanne à angle droit	MB-EPV-40 (Al)	9002531-K
	Eckventil Angel Valve Vanne à angle droit	MB-EPV-40 vernickelt / Ni-plated / nickelé	9002533-K

## Schleusen / Antechambers / Sas

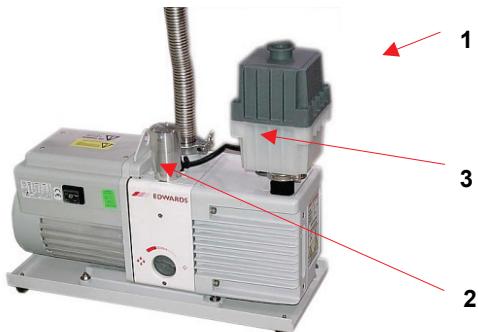
## 13.3.2 Minischleuse / Mini Antechamber / Mini Sas 150 mm



Pos	Beschreibung Description Description	Merkmal Feature Caractéristique	Artikel-Nr. Item no. Article-no
1	Manometer Manometer Manomètre	0/-1bar	3240762
2	3-Wege-Kugelhahn 3-Way Ball Valve Robinet à boisseau sphérique 3 voies	3/8 "	2210480
2a		Unilab / Labstar:	2603906
2a	Anlaufzscheibe Washer disk Rondelle de friction		2602336
3	Tablett Tray Tiroir coulissant		7075485
3a	Teleskopschiene Rail, Telescopic Rail télescopique		7077301
4	Schleusendeckel Cover mini antechamber Porte de sas complète	komplett complete complet	7077293
5	Flachdichtung flat gasket garniture plate	flach flat à plat	7077297

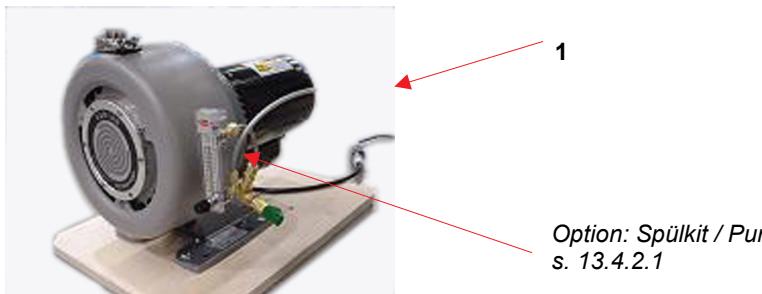
## 13.4 Vakuum-Pumpe / Vacuum Pump / Pompe à vide

### 13.4.1 Standard



Pos	Beschreibung Description Description	Merkmal Feature Caractéristique	Artikel-Nr. Item no. Article-no
1	Vakuumpumpe Vacuum Pump Pompe à vide	RV12	3240487
2	Gasballast-Ölrückführung Gas ballast oil return Gaz ballast et retour d'huile	RV3-RV12	3240540
3	Ölfilter Oil Mist Filter Filtre à brouillard d'huile	EMF20	3240539

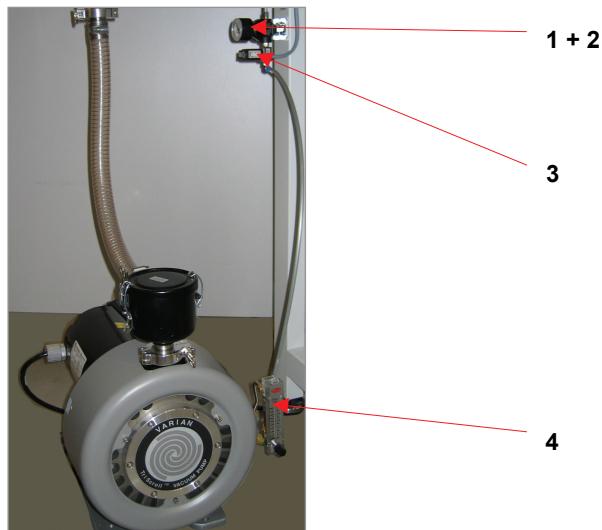
### 13.4.2 Upgrade: Tri-Scroll-Vakuum-Pumpe / Vacuum pump / Pompe à vide



Option: Spülkit / Purge Kit / Kit de purge  
s. 13.4.2.1

Pos	Beschreibung Description Description	Merkmal Feature Caractéristique	Artikel-Nr. Item no. Article-no
1	Vakuumpumpe Vacuum Pump Pompe à vide	TriScroll PTS 310,1 1-phasic / single phase / monophasée	2193001
		3-phasic / three phases / triphasé	2193000

## 13.4.2.1 Tri-Scroll-Pumpe / pump / pompe: Spülkit / Purge kit / Kit de purge

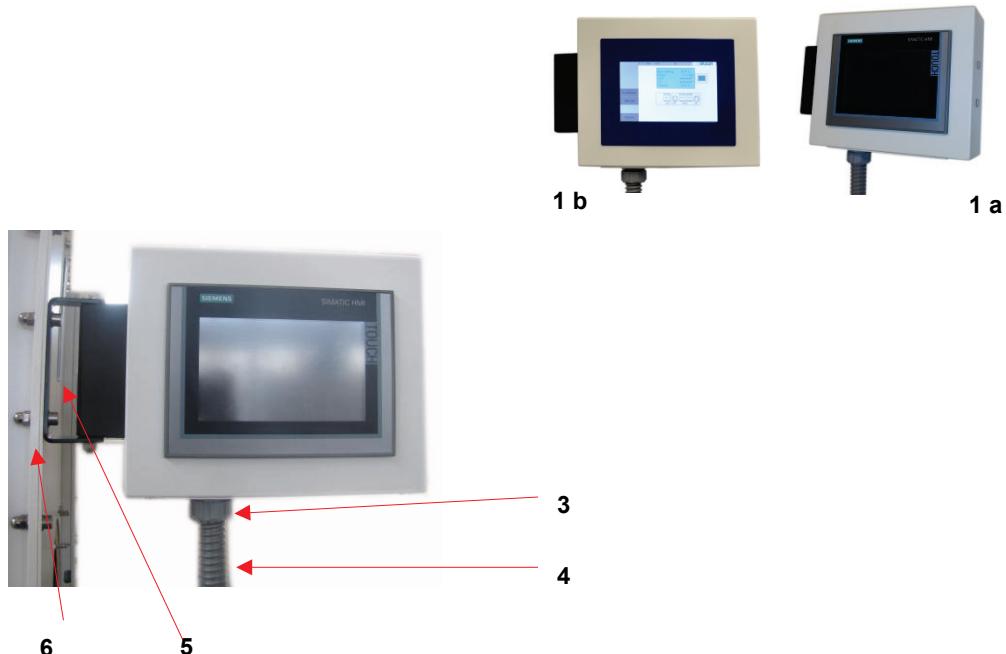


Beispiel / Example

Pos	Beschreibung Description Description	Merkmal Feature Caractéristique	Artikel-Nr. Item no. Article-no
1	Manometer Manometer Manomètre	0..1 bar	4601278
2	Druckregler Pressure controller Régulateur de pression	1/8"; 0,1-0,7 bar entlüftend / de-airing / désaération	4601276
3	Magnetventil Magnetic Valve Électrovanne	A-02,4	3210017
4	Spülkit (Durchflußmesser + Anbauteile) Purge kit Kit de purge	für TriScroll-Pumpe for TriScroll Pump pour pompe TriScroll	3000053

## 13.5 Steuerung / Controlling / Commande

### 13.5.1 Bedienpanel / Operation Panel / Écran tactile



Pos	Beschreibung description description	Merkmal feature entité	Artikel-Nr. item no. article-no
1	Bedienpanel Touch Panel Ecran tactile	a) TP700 (Labmaster, MB20-200)	2605141
		b) TFT70 (Unilab, Labstar)	7107449
2	Gehäuse für Bedienpanel Cabinet for Touch panel Boîtier de panneau de commande	Rechts / Links Right/Left) à droite/à gauche	7023898
3	Schlauchverschraubung Straight grommet Raccord à vis pour tuyau		2600272
4	Kabelschutzschlauch Gray wire track Gaine de protection des câbles		5003044
5	Panelhalter Metallbügel Metal bracket Support du panneau		7070745
6	Panelhalter – Kunststoff Plastic OP bracket Pièce intermédiaire		7070761

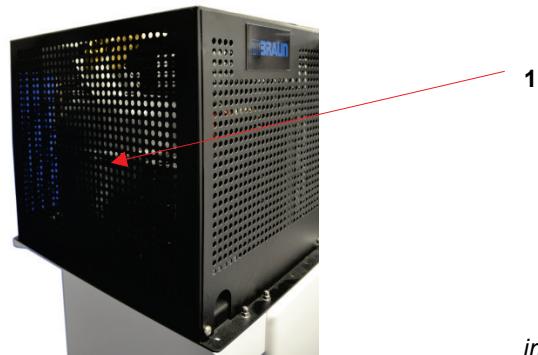
## Steuerung / Controlling / Commande

## 13.5.2 Fußschalter / Foot Switch / Pédalier



Pos	Beschreibung Description Description	Merkmal Feature Caractéristique	Artikel-Nr. Item no. Article-no
1	Fußschalter Foot switch Pédalier		5007021

## 13.6 Option : Kühlschrank / Refrigerator / Congélateur



*innen / inside / intérieur:*

Pos	Beschreibung description description	Merkmal feature entité	Artikel-Nr. item no. article-no
1	Kompressor Compressor Compresseur	MB GS-35 - 230V 50Hz	2600996
	Nur für Nachrüstungen / Only for Upgrade Kits		
	Temperaturregler Temperature controller Régulateur de température	Kit Beta Elektronik Freistehende Einheit Stand-Alone-Unit Stand-Alone-Systeme	2600530



<b>14.1 Overview.....</b>	<b>14-2</b>
---------------------------	-------------

## Overview

## 14 Third Party Documentation

## 14.1 Overview

No.	Hersteller	Art.Nr. MBraun	Beschreibung	Typ	Sprache	PDF <sup>1)</sup>
1	BOC Edwards	3240487	Rotary Vane Pump	RV3/5/8/12 A652-01-882	English	x
2		3240539	Oil Mist Filters	EMF3, EMF10, EMF 20 A462-26-880	English	x
3		3240540	EMF Adjustable Gas Ballast Oil Drain Kit for RV3 to RV12 Pumps	A505-23-882	English	x
4		-----	Vacuum Feedthroughs and Accessoar	Model 6EK25, 7EK10, 10EK25, TL8K25, Earth Electrical Leadthrough,  Model 4RK 10, 8RK25, 12RK25 Rotary Shaft Vacuum Seal  6EK25, 10EK25 Extension Accessory, Type 10, 25 Blanking Plug E-100-99-880	English	x
5	Jumo	4970009	Pressure Sensor	24VDC +/- 20 mbar	Multilingual	x
6	MBRAUN SEW Eurodrive	2700636	Parameter Settings for Frequency Inverter	LTE-B 200-240V	English	x

1) PDF files see CD-ROM or USB-Stick (Annex)

**15.1 Overview.....15-2**

## Overview

# 15 Certificates

## 15.1 Overview

Nº	Manufacturer	Description	Type	Language
1	<b>MBRAUN</b>	CE-Declaration	UNIIab Pro/Plus sp/dp	English
2				
3				

<b>16.1 Safety when handling the electrics of the system .....</b>	<b>16-2</b>
16.1.1 Basic rules.....	16-2
16.1.2 Control cabinet.....	16-3
16.1.3 Work on the electrical system .....	16-3
16.1.4 Electrical safety check.....	16-3
<b>16.2 Wiring Diagrams.....</b>	<b>16-4</b>

## Safety when handling the electrics of the system

### 16 Electrical system & wiring diagrams

#### 16.1 Safety when handling the electrics of the system



##### DANGER!

Risk of personal injury due to electrical voltage in case of error: uncontrolled muscle reactions, crippling, burns or death can result!

- All work on the mains connection, the control cabinet and the electrical system may only be performed by a trained electrician.

In case of electrical shock, inform the emergency physician immediately

##### Emergency OFF

If components are integrated into the **MBRAUN** system and equipped with an EMERGENCY OFF switch, please follow the note below:



##### DANGER

Personal injury and environmental damage due to incorrect operation!

An EMERGENCY OFF of third-party components switches off only these components!

- In case of danger, switch off the main switch on the system's control cabinet!

#### 16.1.1 Basic rules

- The system must be grounded at all times. If necessary, additional potential equalisation must be provided (see chap. Installation and wiring diagrams)
- The mains connection must be made according to local guidelines.
- Modifications to the electrical system must be made in agreement with **MBRAUN**
- Modifications to the electrical system must always be documented in the wiring diagram

### 16.1.2 Control cabinet



#### DANGER

Risk of personal injuries due to electrical voltage in case of error:

- The system may not be operated with an open control cabinet door!
- ▶ Only a trained electrician may open the control cabinet.

Before opening the control cabinet and starting work on the electrical system

- ▶ Switch off the main switch
- ▶ Or: remove the mains plug from the outlet or de-energise the mains connection!
- ▶ Secure it against being switched on again.

### 16.1.3 Work on the electrical system

Before working on the electrical system:

- ▶ Measure potential

The system must be de-energised!

### 16.1.4 Electrical safety check

After each change to the electrical systems / maintenance and repair, perform an electrical test.



Cyclical testing is due according to BGV A3 / national operational safety regulations or in-house regulations.

- ▶ Document the inspection performed in the **MBRAUN** maintenance log
- ▶ Compare the measured values with the data from the Initial test to evaluate the test result..

*Wiring Diagrams*

## 16.2 Wiring Diagrams

*Included on following pages*

This page should be replaced by the actual wiring diagrams

Otherwise please contact the service of 

*Wiring Diagrams*





M. Braun Inertgas-Systeme GmbH  
Dieselstraße 31 • D-85748 Garching

Tel.: +49 (0) 89 / 32 669-0 • Fax: +49 (0) 89 / 32 669-105  
E-Mail: [info@mbraun.de](mailto:info@mbraun.de) • Internet: [www.mbraun.com](http://www.mbraun.com)